Oracle® Applications

Upgrading Oracle Applications

Release 11*i* (11.5.10.2)

Part No. B19297-01

July 2005

This book describes all the steps necessary to upgrade a
system from Oracle Applications Release 10.7 or Release 11.0
to Release 11*i* (11.5.10.2).

ORACLE®

Oracle Applications Upgrading Oracle Applications, Release 11*i* (11.5.10.2)

Part No. B19297-01

Copyright © 2000, 2005 Oracle. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Carole Eubanks

Contributor: Ada Constanzo-Muller, Janet Buckbinder, Gail D"Aloisio, Steve Damiani, Taite Darlington, Miles Fender, Colin Gould, Matthew Lobaugh, Elizabeth Looney, Julia Margetson, Kent Noble, Kristin Penaskovic, Louise Raffo, Christina Ravaglia, Susan Saperstein, Yun Shaw, Mildred Wang

Contents

2   Category 2 — After You Receive the Software

3   Category 3 — Performing the Upgrade

6 Category 6 — Before Using Product Features

7   Finishing the Upgrade

Index

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle Applications Upgrading Oracle Applications, Release 11*i* (11.5.10.2)

Part No. B19297-01

Oracle welcomes your comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this publication. Your input is an important part of the information used for revision.

- Did you find any errors?
- Is the information clearly presented?
- Do you need more information? If so, where?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?
- What features did you like most about this manual?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, please indicate the title and part number of the documentation and the chapter, section, and page number (if available). You can send comments to us at apps_relgrp_us@orace.com.

If you have problems with the software, please contact your local Oracle Support Services.

x

Preface

Upgrading Oracle Applications describes necessary steps for preparing Applications products for an upgrade to Release 11*i* (11.5.10.2) and for performing post-upgrade steps after you run AutoUpgrade. It is intended for users who are upgrading from Oracle Applications Release 10.7 (character mode, NCA, and SmartClient) or Release 11.0.

> **Note:** An upgrade to 11.5.10.2 employs the latest version of Rapid Install (11.5.10.2), which includes the 11.5.10 Consolidated Update 2 (CU2). You do not need to apply CU2 separately during or following the system upgrade.

Intended Audience

This book is intended for use by anyone who is responsible for installing or upgrading Oracle Applications.

Upgrade Role	Description
Application Specialist	Provides knowledge and guidance regarding application functionality.
Database Administrator	Installs and configures the Oracle database and maintains database access controls.
System Administrator	Responsible for administering systems.
Technical Specialist	Responsible for designing, developing, unit testing, implementing, and maintaining the custom extensions for the Oracle Applications.
IS Manager	Directs the client information systems organization within a business.

Documentation Accessibility

Our goal is to make Oracle products, services, and supporting documentation accessible, with good usability, to the disabled community. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our

customers. For additional information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program Web site at

```
http://www.oracle.com/accessibility
```

Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation   JAWS, a Windows screen reader, may not always correctly read the code examples in this document. The conventions for writing code require that closing braces should appear on an otherwise empty line; however, JAWS may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

Accessibility of Links to External Web Sites in Documentation   This documentation may contain links to Web sites of other companies or organizations that Oracle does not own or control. Oracle neither evaluates nor makes any representations regarding the accessibility of these Web sites.

Structure

This book contains the following chapters:

- Chapter 1 describes Category 1 steps. They do not require the new software. You can continue to use your existing Oracle Applications environment.

- Chapter 2 describes Category 2 steps. They require the new software. You can continue to use your Oracle Applications products at the existing release level.

- Chapter 3 describes Category 3 steps. These steps mark the beginning of the system downtime required to complete an upgrade.

- Chapter 4 describes Category 4 steps. They assume you have already upgraded your products and your database. You must complete these steps before the Oracle Applications system can be made available to users.

- Chapter 5 describes Category 5 steps. They affect specific products, which cannot be made available to users until the steps are complete.

- Chapter 6 describes Category 6 steps. They affect specific product features, which cannot be made available to users until the steps are complete.

- Chapter 7 describes tasks required to finish the upgrade and optional tasks that may apply to some systems.

Organization

This book is organized by upgrade *category*. There are three types of steps: pre-upgrade, post-grade, and finishing. Categories 1, 2, and 3 are *pre-upgrade* steps, which you perform *before* you run AutoUpgrade. Categories 4, 5, and 6 are *post-upgrade* steps, which you perform *after* you have run AutoUpgrade. You must complete all steps that apply to your installation before you begin the next category.

After all Category 4, 5, and 6 steps have been completed, and after you have verified that the entire upgrade was successful, you must perform *finishing* steps to complete the upgrade. Some finishing steps are required, and some are optional.

Step Conditions

This book classifies steps based on certain conditions that may apply.

If the step is marked...	Then, it...
Required	is necessary for a successful upgrade.
Conditionally required	applies only under certain conditions. If the condition does not apply, you do not have to perform the step.
Recommended	may be in your best interest to perform this step. For example, the step may reduce the time it takes to perform the upgrade.

Step Summaries

Below each numbered step heading you will find specific requirements for the step. For example:

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications*
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	AP_MRC_EXCHANGE_RATES

In addition, the step summaries *may* provide other information such as a specific country and concurrent manager requirements.

Related Documents

This book was current as of the time it was initially published. It is included in the *Oracle Applications Document Library*, which is supplied in the Release 11*i* software bundle. Later versions of this and other documents that have changed sufficiently between releases to warrant re-publishing are made available at the following URL:

`http://www.oracle.com/technology/documentation/applications.html`

You can also purchase hard-copy documentation from the Oracle Store at `http://oraclestore.oracle.com`.

In addition to this book, we suggest you have the following additional references on hand.

If you are looking for...	See these documents...

Additional information	*Oracle Applications Concepts*
	Installing Oracle Applications
	Maintaining Oracle Applications Documentation Set:
	    Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities
	    Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures
	Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes*
	Oracle Applications Release Notes*
	Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes*
	Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Configuration
	Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance
	Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security
	Oracle Self-Service Web Applications Implementation Manual
	Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide
	Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide
	Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual

Information on new features in this release	*Release Content Documents and Features Summary Matrices** *Oracle Applications DBA 11i+ Features Matrix** Oracle Applications Product Update Notes Electronic Technical Reference Manual (eTRM)*

If you are looking for...	See these documents...
Application-specific features	Oracle Applications user guides Oracle Applications implementation manuals Customer Relationship Management implementation manuals Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications
Information about custom development	*Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-based Products* *Oracle9i Applications Developers' Guide*
Database information	*Oracle9i Concepts* *Oracle9i Backup and Recovery Concepts* *Oracle9i Reference* *Oracle9i Designing and Tuning for Performance* *Oracle9i National Language Support Guide* *Oracle9i Migration Guide*

*Available only on Oracle*MetaLink*

Update or patch readme files may contain additional information about new documentation that you can download.

Training and Support

Oracle offers a complete set of training courses and multi-level support services.

Training

You can attend training courses at any Oracle Education Center, arrange for trainers to teach at your facility, or use Oracle Learning Network (OLN) — Oracle University's online education utility. Oracle training professionals can also develop custom courses using your organization structure, terminology, and data as examples.

Support

Your Oracle support team includes a Technical Representative and Account Manager. It also includes Oracle consultants and support specialists who have expertise in your business area, and in managing an Oracle database server and your hardware and software environment.

Oracle*MetaLink* is a self-service, Web-based support connection, which is maintained by Oracle Support Services 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Use it to obtain information and advice from technical libraries and forums, download patches, look at bug details, and create or update TARs. Register at http://metalink.oracle.com, and check for updates and information before you install or upgrade your Oracle Applications. The *Start Here* CD also contains links to the various resources on Oracle*MetaLink*.

EMM Advantage

The EasiPath Migration Method (EMM Advantage) offers a methodology for upgrading Oracle Applications. Produced by Oracle Corporation, EMM Advantage helps you structure and manage your upgrade project.

A comprehensive migration toolkit, EMM Advantage is a tested framework for quality migrations. It includes the Oracle EasiPath Migration Method (EMM), a proven, structured approach used successfully worldwide by Oracle consultants, and Project Management Method (PJM), a standardized Oracle approach to project management. The EMM Advantage toolkit, in combination with your skills, experience, and business knowledge, will ensure a higher-quality migration and lead you to business

results faster. It is available from the Oracle Direct Marketing group in your country, or you can contact your local Oracle Sales Representative.

Conventions

The following typographic conventions are used in this book:

Convention	Meaning
UNIX: **Windows:**	Indicates platform-specific information. This guide contains information for both UNIX and Windows platforms. Instructions for UNIX platforms also apply to Linux platforms, unless otherwise noted.
$ or C:\>	Represents the platform-specific command prompt. Your prompt may differ.
Monospace text	Represents command line text. Type this text exactly as shown.
< >	Text enclosed in angle brackets represents a variable. Substitute a value for the variable text. Do not type the brackets.
[ ]	Encloses optional items or indicate a function key. *Do not type the brackets*.
|	Represents an *or* option among several options. You must enter only one of the options. *Do not type the vertical bar*.
\	In examples of commands you type online, a backslash at the end of a line signifies that you must type the entire command on one line. *Do not type the backslash*.
Special Notes	Alert you about information within the body of the book. They include Additional Information, Note, and Caution.

Overview and Requirements

This second Preface contains important overview information and system requirements that you should be familiar with before you begin the upgrade. If you are using Release 10.7 (NCA, SmartClient, or character-mode) or Release 11.0 of Oracle Applications, you may upgrade directly to Release 11*i*. *You cannot upgrade to Release 11i directly from releases prior to 10.7.*

> **Note:** If you have already upgraded to an earlier version of Release 11*i*, follow the upgrade steps in the *Oracle Applications Release 11.5.10.2 Maintenance Pack Installation Instructions*. This document is available on Oracle*MetaLink* (Doc ID: 259484.1).

In addition, pay special attention to the following information.

- *Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes, Oracle Applications Release Notes*, and *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes* are required reading before you upgrade. They contain important updates to the information in this book, and are available *only* on Oracle*MetaLink*.

- Product-specific implementation manuals contain important information about new products. Consult these references before you begin the upgrade. They are available on the *Oracle Applications Documentation* CD and on the virtual doc CD.

- The instructions in this book apply to upgrades from character-mode Release 10.7 installations. However, most navigation paths are based on GUI versions. The *Oracle Applications Character Mode to GUI Menu Path Changes* reference manual contains character-mode equivalents of GUI menu paths.

> **Note:** Release 10.7 NCA and Release 10 SmartClient (10SC) Production 16.1 are interchangeable at the database level.

Overview of an Upgrade

An Oracle Applications upgrade employs several utilities designed to streamline the process. Rapid Install provides the most up-to-date, certified version of Oracle Applications, along with the required technology stack components. In an upgrade, it creates the new file systems for the application (middle) tier components and the new file system for the database, if it is on a platform that supports Oracle Applications on the application tier.

After you complete the pre-upgrade tasks, you run AutoUpgrade to upgrade products and update the database objects and code to Release 11*i*. Then, you run AutoPatch to

apply the patches and run the drivers required to update the database to the most current release level (for example, 11.5.10). After you have completed the database upgrade, you run Rapid Install a second time to configure and start the servers and services.

For complete information about running these utilities, refer to *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

Upgrade Tasks

In general, perform the following tasks to complete an upgrade:

- Read the documentation associated with this release (see Related Documents in the Preface). All documentation is available either in the *Oracle Applications Documentation Library*, from Oracle*MetaLink*, or from the OracleStore.

- Download and run The Upgrade Manual Script (TUMS) from Oracle*MetaLink* to generate the list of steps that do not apply to your system and can be omitted from the upgrade process. Then, review the remaining steps in this book to determine the most efficient way to upgrade your system.

- Complete the Category 1 steps listed in this manual.

- Begin performing the Category 2 steps. When instructed to do so, run Rapid Install to create the new file systems for the application tier components and the new ORACLE_HOME for the database. See Upgrading Your System in *Installing Oracle Applications* for information about running Rapid Install.

- Use AutoPatch to apply the family consolidated upgrade patches, as directed in the latest *Oracle Applications Release Notes* and complete the remaining Category 2 steps.

- Complete the Category 3 steps, which include running AutoUpgrade. Refer to *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities* for more information about AutoUpgrade.

- Begin the Category 4 steps. When instructed to do so, apply all patches and updates.

- Run Rapid Install again to configure and start the server processes. See Upgrading Your System in *Installing Oracle Applications* for details.

- Complete the remaining Category 4 steps.

- Review the implementation and/or setup steps in the product-specific documentation. These steps activate some of the features added during the upgrade. The *Oracle Applications Documentation* CD and the virtual doc CD contain all product-specific documentation.

- Complete the Category 5 and Category 6 steps, and any associated product-specific implementation steps.

- Complete the tasks in the Finishing the Upgrade chapter in this manual.

> **Note:** If you do not complete these tasks in the order listed, the upgrade is likely to fail.

Installed Components and System Requirements

This section lists the certified components supplied by Rapid Install, and the general system requirements for an upgrade. Note that requirements for CPU, memory, and

disk space (for log files and backups) are typically much larger during an upgrade than during normal operation.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes* contain any requirements that are platform-specific.

Technology Stack Components

Rapid Install automatically installs and configures the required technology stack components for both the database tier and the application tier.

The database tier technology stack for a new Oracle Applications Release 11*i* installation consists of an Oracle9*i* version 9.2.0.6 (9.2.0 Oracle home) for both new installations and upgrades.

The Applications technology stack includes:

- Oracle Internet Application Server *i*AS 1.0.2.2.2 — includes Oracle HTTP Server
- RDBMS 8.0.6 (Oracle Home)
- Oracle Developer6*i* (6.0.8.24):
  - Oracle Forms
  - Oracle Reports
  - Oracle Graphics
- Discoverer (4.1.48)
- JInitiator (1.3.1.18)

See the Certify web page for the latest certification information. You can access Certify from Oracle*MetaLink* (Product Lifecycle > Certifications).

> **Additional Information:** See Frequently Asked Questions about Certify, Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID: 119139.1. See also *Oracle Applications Concepts* for the architectural layout of the components.

Software Requirements

Rapid Install sets up the required Java Development Kit (JDK) for UNIX, Linux, and Windows platforms. If your system is on another platform, see *Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes* for specific information.

The following release maintenance tools must be installed on all nodes and in the PATH of the user account that runs the wizard in the PATH of the login accounts that will be assigned ownership of the database tier and the application tier file systems.

Operating System	Required Maintenance Tools
Solaris (SPARC)	ar, ld, make
Linux	ar, gcc, g++, ld, ksh, make
Windows	MSC ++, MKS Toolkit, GNU make, Perl 5.0053
HP-Tru64	ar, cc, ld, make
HP-UX	ar, cc, acc, make
IBM AIX	ar, ld, linkx1C, make

> **Additional Information:** The *Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes* contain complete information on platform-specific requirements.

CPU

The CPU requirements for an upgrade depend on many factors, including:

- The size of the database

- The amount of data in the primary product installation group (if you are converting to Multi-Org)

- The number of operating units for which seed data is being replicated

- The impact of the change from rule-based optimizer to cost-based optimizer (CBO) on customized code

- The number and duration of long-running processes in Release 11*i* products

See *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities* for recommendations on the number of workers to use during the upgrade. See also Long-running processes in this chapter.

Memory

To calculate the memory requirements for the upgrade, consider:

- Number of forms servers

- Number of concurrent users

- Infrastructure requirements for multi-tiered architecture

Database Size

To estimate the increase in required disk space for upgrading, consider the number of languages being installed and the change in the data model — largely driven by Order Management, Marketing and Sales, and Services products.

> **Additional Information:** See the product-specific documentation for more information. See also Appendix A in *Installing Oracle Applications*.

Tablespace

Your database administrator should take into account the following types of tablespaces, which should be set up before you upgrade:

- SYSTEM tablespace, largely affected by the number of packages and languages.

- Rollback segments

- Temporary tablespace (usually TEMP)

> **Note:** See Tablespace Model in this chapter for information about product tablespaces.

Examine the system tablespace, temp tablespace, and rollback segment sizes during the upgrade test runs to determine the minimum space needed to create new Applications PL/SQL packages in the production upgrade. We recommend setting a minimum SYSTEM tablespace of 9 GB and a minimum TEMP tablespace of 2 GB, with an initial extent of 1 MG.

> **Additional Information:** See Creating Tablespaces in *Oracle9i Database Administrator's Guide*.

Block Size

This release requires an ORACLE database block size of 8K. In addition to providing significant performance improvement, Oracle Applications has some indexes that require a minimum block size of 8K. If you use a 2K or 4K ORACLE blocksize, you must migrate the database to a block size of 8K before you run AutoUpgrade.

> **Additional Information:** See *Database Initialization Parameters for Oracle Applications 11i* (Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID: 216205.1).

Batch Commit Size

Batch commit size determines the number of rows to commit at one time when certain scripts run. Starting with Release 11.0, many scripts that process potentially large quantities of data accept a parameter that specifies the batch commit size. This parameter is automatically passed by AutoUpgrade to the script.

AutoUpgrade prompts you to enter a batch commit size and displays a default value. We recommend that you accept the default.

Scheduling Time for the Upgrade

In an upgrade, *critical system downtime* refers to the period of time when users cannot use Oracle Applications. It includes the time to perform all the Category 3 and 4 upgrade steps, plus the time for AutoUpgrade and AutoPatch to run.

To provide a baseline for upgrade execution times and an opportunity to work out any upgrade issues ahead of time, perform a test upgrade of your existing system, using hardware similar to what you use for the production upgrade. A test upgrade is especially important if your system has been customized.

During a test upgrade, use the Release 11*i* Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet to calculate critical system downtime, total upgrade time by category, and total upgrade time overall. The timing statistics gathered on the Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet allow you to establish a benchmark for subsequent test upgrades and, finally, for the production upgrade. The spreadsheet is included in the *Oracle Applications Documentation Library*.

The Upgrade Manual Script

The Upgrade Manual Script (TUMS) examines the current configuration and creates a report that lists the upgrade steps that *do not* apply to your system. Because TUMS reports on a unique configuration, its output is relevant only to your upgrade. Omitting the steps listed in the TUMS report can significantly reduce the time it takes to perform the upgrade.

Run TUMS in Category 1, before you begin the upgrade process. For information on downloading and applying the TUMS patch, see *Upgrade Manual Script (TUMS) Utility* (Doc ID: 230538.1) on Oracle*MetaLink*.

Maintenance Wizard

The Maintenance Wizard (formerly known as the Upgrade Assistant), provided at no extra charge by Oracle Support Services, helps you plan and perform the upgrade, provides a patching strategy, and ensures a smooth upgrade project. It includes a utility called the E-Business 11*i* Upgrade Assistant, which consolidates the information in *Upgrading Oracle Applications* and other upgrade resources to take you through the

upgrade in a methodical and repeatable sequence of steps. For more information about this tool, see Oracle*MetaLink* document 215527.1.

Minimizing Downtime

Rapid Install creates the new file systems for the application tier components and the new file system for the database. This eliminates the need for many previously required tasks, such as re-linking application executables and generating form, report, and message files.

In addition to performing test upgrades and running TUMS, consider these tips for reducing downtime, you may find it beneficial to install the administration server on a separate node from the database, as the upgrade process is very CPU-intensive.

Migrating or Upgrading your Database

Migrating or upgrading your existing database to Oracle9*i* is a required pre-upgrade task. For migration or upgrade requirements, see the Database Upgrade Tasks section of Chapter 3.

> **Additional Information:** See *Oracle9i Migration* and *Oracle9i Utilities*.

Long-running processes

Certain changes in Release 11*i* have resulted in long-running processes, which may require tuning to optimize performance during the upgrade. To identify long-running processes, review $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out/adt<session_id>.lst (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out\adt<session_id>.lst (Windows). These reports are generated during the AutoUpgrade and AutoPatch sessions during the upgrade downtime window.

> **Additional Information:** See AD Job Timing Reports in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

Long-running processes have been identified in the following areas:

- conversion of database from rules-based optimization of SQL queries to cost-based optimization.

- migration of existing date and non-integer data from character columns to date and number type columns. See Chapter 5, Global Accounting Engine Tasks.

- certain Oracle Payables conversion scripts

Performance of some upgrade scripts can be significantly improved by changing the following database settings for the duration of the upgrade.

hash_area_size (init.ora parameter)

Controls the amount of memory that Oracle can use for hash join processing. Oracle recommends a value of 30 MB for the hash area size, provided that the database server has sufficient available memory. You can calculate the maximum amount of memory that can be used for this parameter by dividing the amount of available memory (after taking into consideration the size of the SGA and the user processes) by the value of the parallel_max_servers.

hash_join_enabled (init.ora parameter)

Set this parameter to true.

parallel_max_servers (init.ora parameter)

Controls the maximum number of parallel query server processes running in the database. Oracle recommends a value equal to 4 times the number of CPUs.

Temporary tablespace

This tablespace (usually TEMP) should be created as a locally managed tablespace using the temporary file option with a uniform allocation size. If the temporary tablespace is not defined in this way, drop the temporary tablespace and recreate it using the following example as a template:

```
SQL> drop tablespace TEMP;
SQL> create TEMPORARY tablespace TEMP
     tempfile 'ts_p_temp1.dbf' size 2048M
     EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL
     UNIFORM SIZE 1M;
```

To verify that the temporary tablespace has been created, execute the following:

```
SQL> select CONTENTS,EXTENT_MANAGEMENT,ALLOCATION_TYPE
     from dba_tablespaces
     where tablespace_name='TEMP';
```

The query output should be:

```
CONTENTS      EXTENT_MANAGEMENT    ALLOCATION_TYPE
------------  -----------------    ---------------
TEMPORARY     LOCAL                UNIFORM
```

After the upgrade, change the hash_area_size and parallel_max_servers settings back to the defaults, and restore the previous storage parameters for the temporary tablespace. After the upgrade, lower the extent size for the temporary tablespace to a value that is less than 1 MB (for example, 128 K).

> **Additional Information:** See *Database Initialization Parameters in Oracle Applications* (Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID: 216205.1).

Important Upgrade Considerations

Some of the new Release 11*i* functionality may affect the way you use Applications products after the upgrade. For a list of changes and enhancements, refer to the *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*, the *About* documents on Oracle*MetaLink*, and the product implementation manuals and user's guides.

Oracle Applications Product Update Notes is published with each major release, so the version available with this release documents only the changes between Release 11.0 and 11.5.1. Enhancements made since that time are documented in the Release Content Documents (RCD). In addition, data model changes are available in the *Electronic Technical Reference Manual* (*eTRM*). Both documents are available on Oracle*MetaLink*.

Other considerations topics are discussed in this section. The topics are arranged alphabetically.

10SC Global Demo Database

Data in Production 16 (10SC) Global Demo databases is not supported in Release 11*i*. See Oracle Common Modules Tasks in Chapter 3 for more information.

Architecture

Oracle Applications Concepts contains a complete discussion of the architecture in this release, including information about the Oracle Applications multi-tiered architecture, Release 11*i* enhancements, language support, file system structure, and the basic data model.

Character-mode Environments

If you are upgrading from a character-mode environment, there are significant infrastructure considerations. For example, you must understand which type of server requires an installation of each product. See *Oracle Applications Concepts* for more information.

Cost-based Optimization (CBO)

Optimization is the process of choosing the most efficient way to execute a SQL statement. Oracle Applications Release 11*i* uses cost-based, rather than rule-based optimization. *Cost-based optimization* dynamically determines the most efficient access paths and join methods for executing SQL statements by taking into account statistics such as the size of each table and the selectivity of each query condition.

Release 11*i* represents a transition from rule-based to cost-based optimization. Because CBO is enabled during the AutoUpgrade process, the pre-upgrade steps in this book are rule-based, while steps performed after you run AutoUpgrade (post-upgrade) are cost-based. You may want to evaluate the impact of CBO on custom code in the test system before you begin the upgrade.

> **Additional Information:** See Cost-based Optimization in *Oracle Applications Concepts*. See also Introduction to Optimization in *Oracle8i Concepts*.

Database Initialization Parameters

Initialization parameters required at each stage of the upgrade may vary depending on when you upgrade your database. You should review the requirements for these parameters before you begin the upgrade. See Oracle*MetaLink* document *Database Initialization Parameters for Oracle Applications* (Doc ID: 216205.1).

Dropping Obsolete Columns

During the upgrade process, the Oracle RDBMS DROP COLUMN command marks Oracle Applications columns as unused in the data dictionary, making it possible for the database administrator to drop the columns and reclaim the associated space. It is a good idea to plan this reclamation ahead of time because the process locks the associated tables. Once the space is reclaimed, the upgraded data model looks more like a fresh install (except for customizations). Note that DROP COLUMN has no effect on custom columns.

Inactive or Partially Implemented Installed Products

You must perform upgrade steps for every installed product regardless of which products you actually use. For example, if you have Oracle Human Resources fully installed but only partially implemented, you must still perform the Oracle Human Resources upgrade steps.

You may also need to perform upgrade steps for some products installed as shared (dependent) products. To determine the dependent products you have installed, run $AD_TOP/sql/adutconf.sql (UNIX) or %AD_TOP%\sql\adutconf.sql (Windows).

All products are installed in the database. Therefore, some steps, like dropping obsolete objects after the upgrade is complete, must be performed for all products.

Installed vs. Licensed Products

Rapid Install creates the Oracle Applications file system, and AutoUpgrade upgrades the objects associated with all products registered in your system. When maintaining Oracle Applications, AutoPatch copies only the files appropriate for the APPL_TOP configuration. For example, report files are not copied into an APPL_TOP that is configured as a forms server. In addition, to save time during patching, AutoPatch does not generate any files for products that are not registered.

Maintenance Mode

Maintenance mode is a new feature that provides a clear separation between normal runtime operation of Oracle Applications and system downtime for maintenance. It ensures optimal performance and reduces downtime during AutoPatch sessions.

You toggle maintenance mode from enabled to disabled from the Change Maintenance Mode menu in AD Administration. When enabled, maintenance mode shuts down the Workflow Business Events System and sets up function security so that no functions are available to users.

> **Additional Information:**   See the sections on Changing Maintenance Mode and on Preparing your System for Patching — Maintenance Mode in Chapter 5 of *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

Multi-Org Installations

In a Multi-Org installation, you defined an Operating Unit and set the site-level AOL profile option MO:Operating Unit to use this new operating unit. *Do not delete this profile option*. If you do, you cannot complete the upgrade process successfully.

Multiple Reporting Currencies

Multiple Reporting Currencies has been incorporated into the APPS schema so the APPS_MRC schema is no longer required. This change, which is transparent to end-users, improves processing efficiency and reduces maintenance. Patches need be applied only once (in the APPS schema), making it unnecessary to synchronize objects between schemas.

The APPS schema is used for standard reports, inquiries, and programs for MRC currency data in MRC-enabled products. MRC data that retrieves custom code may need to be converted to use the database objects in the APPS schema.

> **Additional Information:**   See the *Maintaining Multiple Currencies in Oracle Applications* in Oracle*MetaLink*.

System Backup

We strongly recommend that you back up your entire system before you begin the upgrade as a safeguard against unexpected data loss and application upgrade errors.

Tablespace Model

This release introduces the Oracle Applications Tablespace Model (OATM). In prior releases, each Applications product was allocated two tablespaces, one for tables and one for indexes. OATM uses 12 locally managed tablespaces for all products, including the temporary tablespace, system tablespace, and system-managed undo (SMU). Each database object is mapped to a tablespace based on its input/output characteristics,

including object size, life span, access methods, and locking granularity. This allows for easier maintenance, reduces unnecessary space use, and introduces runtime performance gains.

> **Additional Information:**   For more information on the Oracle Applications Tablespace Migration, see Oracle*MetaLink* document 248857.1.

You can migrate to OATM by using the OATM Migration Utility. This interactive, menu-based PERL program allows for migration of all schemas at once, or for migration of selected schemas. If you plan to convert to the new model, first perform a pre-upgrade step (Database Upgrade Tasks in Chapter 2), and then run OATM Migration Utility after the upgrade process is complete (System-specific Tasks in Chapter 7).

> **Caution:**   The OATM utility does not support a reversal of the migration process — once an object is moved from the old tablespace, it cannot be moved back.

Windows Platforms

On Windows platforms, Release 11*i* application tier components (forms server, Web server, concurrent processing server, and administration server) must be installed on nodes that do *not* have existing Release 10.7 or Release 11.0 installations. If you install Oracle Applications 11*i* on a node that has existing Applications 10.7 or 11.0 components, the registry settings will be changed and those components will no longer be usable.

Languages and Character Sets

This section discusses some important considerations for managing your languages and character sets during the upgrade.

Space for Languages

Additional space for each non-American English language will be required in the database to complete the upgrade. It is not possible to predict the amount of additional space your system will need because the space depends on factors such as the number of active non-American English languages and the database character set — and it depends largely on the volume of customer-created data in the system.

Note that the additional space for languages must be available throughout the upgrade process — while running AutoUpgrade, while applying the English maintenance pack, and while applying the translated maintenance packs.

> **Note:**   For the recommended minimum space required for each active language in the APPL_TOP, see the *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes*.

Language Status

You must retain your existing Applications Release 10.7 or 11.0 language status until the entire upgrade process is complete — including the post-upgrade and finishing steps. The base language must also remain the same, and new languages cannot be activated.

After the upgrade process is complete, you can change your language status as required, and activate new languages. Refer to the Registering a Language and Selecting a New Base Language sections in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures* for detailed information.

Character Sets during the Upgrade

If you need to change the character set of the Release 10.7 or 11.0 database, you must wait until after the upgrade process is complete to make the change.

On the Rapid Install wizard upgrade screens, you must select a character set to be used for the Release 11*i* APPL_TOP. The character set you select must be compatible with the character set of the database *as it exists during the upgrade process*. You can change the APPL_TOP character set from the one in your existing Release 10.7 or 11.0 Applications system, but it must remain compatible with the database character set until the upgrade process is complete.

> **Caution:**   If you change the character set in the APPL_TOP to one that *is not* compatible with the current database character set, the upgraded system will be unusable.

Customized Environments

Customized code may require special attention during an upgrade. The instructions in this book assume that you have followed the standards for customizing Oracle Applications *exactly* as described in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* and the *Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-based Products*. To preserve customizations and minimize the impact during the upgrade, you must:

- Follow the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* instructions
- Read and understand the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* information about upgrading customizations (Customization Standards chapter)
- Maintain complete documentation for customizations
- Back up customizations before the upgrade

Upgrades and Patches

Pay special attention to the Oracle Applications Upgrades and Patches section in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*. It contains important information about how the upgrade treats customizations.

> **Caution:**   Customizing any concurrent program definitions, menus, value sets, or other seeded data provided by Oracle Applications is not supported. The upgrade process overwrites these customizations.

Protecting Data in Renamed Files

Because files can be renamed by various people for a variety of reasons, it is a good idea to protect them during the upgrade. Therefore, if you have renamed files using the <filename>old, <filename>new, or any other generic designation, rename them before you begin the upgrade to prevent them from being accidentally overwritten.

Customized Reports and Forms

SQL*Report (RPT), the flexfield APIs FlexRpt, and FlexSQL are no longer supported. Rewrite any custom reports that use these programs with a tool such as Oracle Reports Developer.

> **Additional Information:** See Coding Oracle Reports Concurrent Programs in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*. See also Upgrading Custom Forms to Release 11*i* in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Customized Help Files

The help files in this release are in HTML format, making them easy to modify using a commercial web browser/editor. You cannot reapply previously customized help files to Release 11*i*. Therefore, it is important that you save the pre-upgrade customized help files as a reference.

> **Additional Information:** See Customizing Oracle Applications Help in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Configuration*.

Product-specific Information

The information in this section applies to specific Applications products in this release. For more information, see *Release Content Documents and Features Summary Matrices* on Oracle*MetaLink*.

Marketing & Sales and Service Product Families

If you have any products from the Marketing and Sales and the Service product families installed and your system is Oracle Applications Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i, you can upgrade directly to Oracle Applications 11.5.10. Follow instructions in the appropriate upgrade categories in this book.

Public Sector/University

The following new and redesigned Public Sector/University products are included in this release:

- Oracle Public Sector Budgeting

- Oracle Public Sector Financials (International)

- Oracle Grants Proposal

- Oracle Student System

- Oracle U.S. Federal Financials

These products add functionality built on existing Oracle Applications products. Pay special attention to the manual upgrade steps in this book, as well as the implementation and/or setup steps in the product-specific documentation.

> **Note:** Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Version 2.0 applies to Oracle Applications Release 10.7, and Version 3.3 applies to Release 11.0.3.

FlexBuilder/Account Generator

In Release 11.0, FlexBuilder was replaced by the Account Generator using Oracle Workflow.

> **Additional Information:** See Overview of the Account Generator in *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*. See also *Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide* and *Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide*.

> **Note:** References to FlexBuilder apply to Oracle Projects only with respect to project transactions that interface with Oracle Payables and Oracle Purchasing. For other purposes, Oracle Projects continues to use AutoAccounting.

If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10.7 to build Accounting Flexfield code combinations, you must have Oracle Workflow installed and set up to use the Account Generator. AutoUpgrade installs Oracle Workflow for you. However, you must complete some additional setup steps after the AutoUpgrade processing. If you plan to customize the Account Generator configuration, install the Oracle Workflow Builder on the desktop client.

Before the upgrade, review the way each product uses the Account Generator to generate Accounting Flexfield code combinations. Consider whether the default Account Generator processes are appropriate for each product, and appropriate for each set of books that uses a unique Accounting Flexfield structure. For each structure and set of books, you can choose to:

- use the default Account Generator process

- use the previously customized Release 10.7 FlexBuilder assignment created for Release 11*i* in the upgrade process

- customize the default Account Generator process

This choice determines which post-upgrade steps you must perform.

Oracle Receivables and Oracle Projects

To interface draft invoices to Oracle Receivables, Oracle Projects pre-defines a context for the AR Transaction flexfield, and also pre-seeds a batch source, transaction types, and grouping and ordering rules for Projects invoices in Receivables. The following changes were made in Release 11.0 to the Oracle Projects seed data in Oracle Receivables.

Seed Data Type	Old Name	New Name
Transaction Flexfield Context	PA INVOICES	PROJECTS INVOICES
Batch Source	PA INVOICES	PROJECTS INVOICES
Transaction Type	PA Invoice	Projects Invoice
Transaction Type	PA Credit Memo	Projects Credit Memo
Grouping Rules	PA Grouping Rule	Projects Grouping Rule
Ordering Rules	PA Ordering Rule	Projects Ordering Rule

In new installations, you see only the new data. In upgrades from Release 10.7, these seed data changes do not apply. However, you continue to see the new values

(PROJECTS) as well as the old values (PA). Continue to use *only* the old values. New data is replicated for the new operating units created in this release.

Oracle Quality

Collection elements Available Quantity, Completed Quantity, and Ship To Location are pre-defined and seeded in Oracle Quality. Existing user-defined collection elements with these names are renamed with the prefix @ during the upgrade. For example, Available Quantity becomes @Available Quantity.

As a result, after the upgrade you have two collection elements with similar names. When you create collection plans or run reports and queries, consider which collection element to use: the Quality-defined collection element or the renamed user-defined collection element.

1

Category 1 — Before You Receive the Software

This chapter describes the Category 1 steps — they require nothing from the new software. After you complete them, you can continue to use current Oracle Applications environment. We recommend that you perform these steps as soon as you know that you will be upgrading to Release 11*i* of Oracle Applications.

The following upgrade tasks are discussed in this chapter:

Database

You must complete the tasks in this section before you perform the Applications Technology steps or the product-specific steps.

Database Upgrade Tasks

Before you begin these tasks, you should take advantage of The Upgrade Manual Script (TUMS). It creates a report that lists the upgrade steps that *do not* apply to your system. You can safely omit from the upgrade any step on the list. For information on creating the TUMS report, see *Upgrade Manual Script (TUMS) Utility* (Doc ID: 230538.1) on Oracle*MetaLink*.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Back up the Oracle Applications database	Recommended	Database Administrator
2. Maintain multilingual tables	Conditionally Required	System Administrator

Task List		Status	Responsibility
3.	Verify operating system login	Required	System Administrator
4.	Rename custom database objects with Applications prefixes	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
5.	Back up Oracle Applications and customizations	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator

Step 1 Back up the Oracle Applications database

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Backup and Recovery Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

Make a cold backup of the Oracle Applications database. Use it to restore the database if you encounter problems during the upgrade process.

> **Caution:**   Shut down the database with the NORMAL option. You may not be able to restore the database from the backup if you use the IMMEDIATE or ABORT option.

Step 2 Maintain multilingual tables

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Installation, Release 10.7 or 11.0*
Users must log off?	No

If your system has active languages other than American English, ensure the validity and accuracy of the multilingual tables by running the "Maintain multi-lingual tables" task from the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in AD Administration. There should be no ORACLE errors.

Release 10.7:

The log file is in $APPL_TOP/install/log (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\install\log (Windows).

Release 11.0:

The log file is in $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/log (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\log (Windows), where <SID> is the name of the database against which you ran AD Administration.

Step 3 Verify operating system login

This step is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Installing Oracle Applications*
Users must log off?	No

You need one main operating system login (typically applmgr) to run AutoUpgrade and to manage Oracle Applications product files. Because you are upgrading, the Applications login has already been created. Be sure that you can log in to all the machines in the environments that are affected by the upgrade process.

> **Additional Information:**   See Creating Login Accounts in *Installing Oracle Applications*.

Step 4 Rename custom database objects with Applications prefixes

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

In order to upgrade custom database objects, you should be aware of these important considerations:

- The *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* contains extensive instructions about naming standards and issues related to upgrading custom database objects. You should be completely familiar with this information before you begin the upgrade.

- Before you actually run the upgrade, you should run several test upgrades and track their impact on your custom database objects.

> **Caution:**   Failure to test the impact on custom database objects before the upgrade can result in a loss of functionality

Step 5 Back up Oracle Applications and customizations

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Backup and Recovery Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

Back up existing Oracle Applications product files, product customizations, customized help files (in HTML), and the Oracle Applications database before you begin to unload the Oracle Applications software.

Applications Technology

This portion of the upgrade applies to all users. Complete these tasks before you perform the product-specific steps.

System Administration Tasks

Perform the following tasks for System Administration.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Determine attachment file upload directory	Conditionally required	System Administrator
2. Preserve the CUSTOM library	Recommended	System Administrator

Step 1 Determine attachment file upload directory

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7NCA or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual, Oracle System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*
Users must log off?	No

In Releases 10.7NCA and 11.0, you could attach file-type documents to any application entity with Oracle Applications Attachments. The files were stored in a directory on the application tier, with its location stored in the Attachment File Directory profile option. In Release 11*i*, file-type attachments are stored in the database. In this step, determine the location of existing attachment files so that you can load them into the database in the System Administration Tasks in Chapter 4.

1. As the system administrator, choose Profile > System.

2. In the Find System Profile Values window, type *Attachment File Directory* in the Profile field. Press Find.

3. If a profile option has been set, write down its current directory path. If there is no profile option, there are no attachment files to be upgraded.

4. In the operating system on the application server, verify that there are files in the directory specified by the profile option setting.

Step 2 Preserve the CUSTOM library

This step is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

Make a backup of the CUSTOM library (CUSTOM.pll) to use when you migrate the library to Release 11*i* in Step 10 of the System Administration Tasks in Chapter 4.

> **Additional Information:** See Using the CUSTOM Library in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Application Object Library Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Application Object Library.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Transition custom forms to Oracle Forms Developer 6i	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Transition custom forms to Oracle Forms Developer 6i

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 10SC (SmartClient)** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Oracle Applications User Interface Standards*
Users must log off?	No

If you are upgrading from the Release 10.7 character-mode SQL*Forms 2.3, rewrite custom forms in Oracle Forms 6*i*. If you are upgrading from Release 10SC (SmartClient), Release 10.7, or Release 11.0, and the forms are already in Oracle Forms 4.5, upgrade them now.

> **Additional Information:** See Customization Standards in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Oracle Alert Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Alert.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Purge Alert and Action Set Check alerts	Recommended	Database Administrator

Step 1 Purge Alert and Action Set Check alerts

This step is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

For the best upgrade performance, it's a good idea to keep the ALR_ACTION_HISTORY table small (20,000 rows or less). To selectively purge alerts in this table:

For 10.7:

Download and apply patch 451137. Then, from the AOL (APPLSYS) schema, run al451137.sql (located in $ALR_TOP/patchsc/107/sql). The script prompts for *numdays* (the age of the history to be deleted). History older than the number of days entered will be deleted.

For 11.0:

Download and apply patch 451137. Then, as the Alert Manager, perform these steps:

1. Navigate to the Alerts window (Alerts > Define) and choose Query > Enter.

2. Type Purge% in the Name field and choose Query > Run.

3. Click Enable and save the screen. The default for Numdays is 30 and for Application is ALL. If you leave these fields blank, Alert Checks older than 30 days will be deleted for all applications.

4. Choose Request > Check to run Purge Alert and Action Set Checks. Enter "Oracle Alert" in the Application field, and "Purge" in the Alert Parameter field.

Oracle Workflow Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Workflow.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Upgrade to Oracle Workflow 2.0.3	Required	System Administrator

Step 1 Upgrade to Oracle Workflow 2.0.3

This step is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Installation, Release 10.7 or 11.0*
Users must log off?	No

To complete the upgrade to Release 11*i*, you must be using version 2.0.3 of Oracle Workflow. Use SQL*Plus to determine your current version:

```
select text from wf_resources where name = 'WF_VERSION';
```

If this command returns the version "2.0.3", no further action is necessary. If the version is not 2.0.3, apply patch 668409 before you continue with the Release 11*i* upgrade. The patch is available on Oracle*MetaLink*.

Financials

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financials products you have installed.

Oracle Cash Management Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Cash Management.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Back up custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Back up custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Reconciliation Open Interface (*Oracle Cash Management User's Guide*)
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	CE_999_BACKUP

If you have implemented the Reconciliation Open Interface and customized it to work in your environment, back up CE_999_INTERFACE_V (view) and CE_999_PKG (package) to the APPS account, or write a script to recreate them after the upgrade. You will reinstall them in Step 1 of the Oracle Cash Management Tasks in Chapter 6.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Payables.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Complete outstanding payment batches	Required	Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1 Complete outstanding payment batches

This step is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Cancel Payment Batch and Confirm Payment Batch (*Payables Reference Manual, Release 10.7); (Payables User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*)
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AP_COMPLETE_OUTSTANDING_PAYMENTS

In character-mode, navigate to the Cancel Payment Batch form (\Navigate Controls Payment ResetPaymentBatch) to see if there are any outstanding payment batches and to confirm or cancel a payment batch.

In GUI, as the Payables Manager, choose Payments > Entry > Payment Batches. Query for in-process payment batches. Complete or cancel batches by choosing the Actions button and using the Actions window.

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Receivables.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Rename custom tax structure	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
2. Save custom tax vendor extension views	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
3. Verify realized gains, realized losses, and rounding accounts	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Receivables)
4. Migrate customers as persons	Conditionally Required	System Administrator

Step 1 Rename custom tax structure

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AR_RENAME_CUSTOM_TAX

If you have created a customized Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure, rename the customized structures so AutoUpgrade does not overwrite them. AutoUpgrade creates the following default structures: Province, Province.City, City, State.City, State.County.City, No Validation - Country.

> **Note:**   Name the customized Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure something other than one of the six default structures.

Step 2 Save custom tax vendor extension views

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AR_SAVE_TAX_VENDOR_VIEW

If you have implemented the Tax Vendor Extension and customized the Tax Vendor Extension views, save the customized copies or write a script to recreate them. You will reinstall these views in Step 2 of the Oracle Receivables Tasks in Chapter 5. Once you complete this step, do not add any more customized views until *after* you run AutoUpgrade.

> **Note:** Software to integrate Taxware (previously known as AVP) and Vertex is included in Receivables Release 11 and 11*i*. If you previously integrated Receivables Release 10 with Taxware or Vertex using software supplied by the Oracle Design and Migration Services (DMS), see *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum Release 11i* or *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use System Release 11i*.

Step 3 Verify realized gains, realized losses, and rounding accounts

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Receivables User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AR_VERIFY_GAINS_LOSSES_ACCOUNTS

For each organization where you have defined a Realized Gains, Realized Losses, or Cross Currency Rounding account, verify that each account is enabled and valid as of the date you perform the upgrade.

Step 4 Migrate customers as *persons*

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Receivables User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AR_MIGRATE_CUSTOMERS

Customer records migrated to Oracle Receivables are brought in, by default, as organizations (companies). To migrate a particular customer (or set of customers) as *persons*, set the CUSTOMER_CATEGORY_CODE in the RA_CUSTOMERS table to CONSUMER for each such customer.

Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Financials for Latin America.

Task List		Status	Country/Responsibility
1.	Import outstanding bank collection documents	Required	Brazil/Application Specialist (Payables)
2.	Restore all archived technical appraisals and adjustments	Recommended	Colombia/Application Specialist
3.	Print all completed transactions	Required	Argentina, Brazil, Colombia/System Administrator

Step 1 Import outstanding bank collection documents

This step is **Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades (**Brazil**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
Requires Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	JL_IMPORT_OUTSTANDING_BANK

Import all bank collection documents from the Bank Collection Documents interface tables. From the Brazilian Payables responsibility, run the Import Bank Collection Documents program from the Standard Request Submission windows (Other > Requests > Run). Use the Imported Collection Documents window (Collection Documents > Imported > Collection Docs) to review and fix all rejected bank collection documents.

> **Additional Information:** See Entering and Associating Collection Documents in *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*.

Step 2 Restore all archived technical appraisals and adjustments

This step is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades (**Colombia**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
Requires Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	JL_RESTORE_ARCH_APPRAISALS

With Oracle Assets for Colombia, you can run a technical appraisal against multiple depreciation books. Restoring archived technical appraisals and adjustments ensures that data created in Release 11 is upgraded to meet Release 11*i* standards.

> **Note:** If you omit this step, the technical appraisal data archived in Release 11 is not upgraded to the Release 11*i* format, and you cannot restore it after the upgrade. Also, you could unknowingly revalue a technical appraisal against a book in which the appraisal was already revalued in Release 11.

> **Additional Information:** See Archiving, Purging, and Restoring Technical Appraisals in *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*.

Step 3 Print all completed transactions

This step is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades (**Argentina, Brazil, Colombia**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JL_PRINT_ALL_COMPLETED_TRX

You must successfully print all completed transactions *before* upgrading to Release 11*i*. Incidents such as printing errors can cause a mismatch between an invoice transaction number and the number on a pre-numbered form. In such cases, use the Regional Receivables Copy and Void process to maintain accurate audit information. You can copy and void only those transactions that have *not* been transferred to General Ledger.

> **Caution:** If you print completed transactions after the upgrade, printing errors could irreparably corrupt the audit trail for transactions you have already transferred to General Ledger.

Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Projects.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Complete transfer and tieback of cost, revenue, and invoices	Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
2.	Clear Transaction Interface table	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist/ Application Specialist (Projects)
3.	Transfer asset lines and post mass additions	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
4.	Upgrade to the new summarization model	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist/ Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1 Complete transfer and tieback of cost, revenue, and invoices

This step is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 (except character mode) or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
Requires Concurrent Manager?	Yes

Complete the transfer and tieback processes for all cost and revenue transactions and invoices during the normal processing cycle.

Process Name	Process Name
PRC: Tieback Expense Reports from Payables	PRC: Tieback Invoices from Receivables
PRC: Tieback Labor Costs from General Ledger	PRC: Tieback Revenues from General Ledger
PRC: Tieback Total Burdened Cost from GL	PRC: Tieback Usage Costs from GL

To run a process, choose Other > Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter the process name and submit the request. Run each process again just before you run AutoUpgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed.

Step 2 Clear Transaction Interface table

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
Requires Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PA_CLEAR_TRANS_INTERFACE_TBL

Perform only if you have any pending transactions in the transaction interface table (PA_TRANSACTION_INTERFACE_ALL).

Import all pending transactions from the transaction interface table into Oracle Projects. Choose Other > Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Transaction Import and submit the request. Enter a Transaction Source at the prompt.

To be certain that the table is cleared, run the Transaction Import process for each Transaction Source. If the process rejects any records, fix them and run the Transaction Import process again, or delete the records from the table.

Run this process again just before you run AutoUpgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed.

Step 3 Transfer asset lines and post mass additions

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
Requires Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PA_TRANSFER_ASSET_LINES

If you use the Capital Projects feature in Oracle Projects, complete the transfer of asset lines to Oracle Assets as part of the normal processing cycle.

- To transfer asset lines, choose Other > Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Interface Assets and submit the request.

- To create assets from the assets lines you transferred, run the Post Mass Additions program in Oracle Assets. From the Fixed Assets Manager responsibility, choose Mass Additions > Post Mass Additions.

Run these processes again just before you run AutoUpgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed.

Step 4 Upgrade to the new summarization model

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
Requires Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PA_UPGRADE_TO_SUMMARIZATION_MODEL

If you are using the pre-Release 10.7 accumulation model, upgrade to the new summarization model. Choose Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Update Project Summary Amounts and submit the request. Run this process for all projects.

Human Resources

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Human Resources products you have installed.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Human Resources.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Update custom code that references obsolete synonyms	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
2. Update custom reports that reference HRV_ and OTV_	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
3. Note location of custom script for Salary Proposal view	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
4. Update custom code for positions	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
5. Update user-defined FastFormula definitions	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
6. Update Vertex geocodes data	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator

Step 1 Update custom code that references obsolete synonyms

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	PER_UPDATE_CUSTOM_CODE

AutoUpgrade drops certain synonyms that existed in Release 10.7 for compatibility with Release 9. If you have custom code that references one of the following Release 9 names, replace it with the associated Release 10.7 name.

Release 9 Name	Release 10.7 Name
PER_LETTER_GENERATION_STATUSES	PER_LETTER_GEN_STATUSES
PER_ABSENCE_ATTENDANCE_REASONS	PER_ABS_ATTENDANCE_REASONS
PER_CONTACTS	PER_CONTACT_RELATIONSHIPS
PER_CLASSIFICATIONS	PER_SPECIAL_INFO_TYPES

Step 2 Update custom reports that reference HRV_ and OTV_

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	PER_UPDATE_CUSTOM_REPORTS

AutoUpgrade drops views that begin HRV_ and OTV_. If you have custom reports that contain these prefixes, amend them to reflect the new HRMS Intelligence views.

Step 3 Note location of custom script for Salary Proposal view

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	PER_CHECK_SALARY_PROP_VIEW

The Salary Proposals view (formerly PER_SALARY_PROPOSALS_HRV) is renamed to HRU_SALARY_PROPOSALS to make its name consistent with other views that can be customized. Run peupl01v.sql from $PER_TOP/admin/sql (UNIX) or %PER_TOP%\admin\sql (Windows) to create the view. If you have previously customized this script, reapply the changes to the newly delivered script using a text editor. Check the absolute location of the customized script *before* the upgrade since PER_TOP points to the new code tree *after* upgrade.

Step 4 Update custom code for positions

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	PER_UPDATE_CUSTOM_POSITIONS

Before Release 11*i*, position information was stored in the PER_ALL_POSITIONS table in: PER_POSITIONS and PER_POSITIONS_V1. Now, position information has been datetracked, and the information stored in the HR_ALL_POSITIONS_F table. New views, HR_POSITIONS_V and other standard datetracked views, support datetracked positions. If you have created custom code that references the old position tables or views, update it to reference the new datetracked ones.

Step 5 Update user-defined FastFormula definitions

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PER_UPDATE_FF_DEFINITIONS

In VARCHAR columns, dates are stored in canonical format (YYYY/MM/DD HH24:MI:SS format, instead of DD-MON-YYYY), and decimal numbers are stored using the decimal place character ("."), even for countries where a different character is standard (for example, France uses a comma).

With Oracle FastFormula, you can define database items or functions for use in any formula. If you have previously defined your own database items, change the item definitions and PL/SQL route definitions to reflect these changes.

To change database item definitions:

On any VARCHAR columns used to store numbers or dates, change ff_database_items.definition_text as follows: use fnd_number.canonical_to_number (instead of to_number) and fnd_date.canonical_to-date (instead of to_date). For example, a database item with definition text "to_number (EEV.screen_entry_value)" should be changed to "fnd_number.canonical_to_number (EEV.screen_entry_value)".

To change a route definition:

Remove to_date (and DD-MON-YYYY) from any date context in ff_routes.text. For example, a route with text containing "and to_date(\&B1, 'DD-MON-YYYY') between EE.effective_start_date and EE.effective_end_date" should be changed to read "and \&B1 between EE.effective_start_date and EE.effective_end_date".

Step 6 Update Vertex geocodes data

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PER_UPDATE_VERTEX

Each patch requires that you have applied the *previous* year's patch, released in July. AutoUpgrade automatically upgrades the system to the latest Geocode data, if you have applied the prerequisite patch. For example, for an upgrade in April 2003, you must have applied (at least) the Geocode patch for 2002 (released in July 2002). For an upgrade in October 2003, you must have applied the Geocode patch for 2003 (released in July 2003).

Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Payroll (U.S.).

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Update custom code for U.S. tax information (W4) changes	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
2.	Complete all Multiple Worksite reporting	Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Update custom code for U.S. tax information (W4) changes

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	PAY_UPDATE_CUSTOM_W4

If you have built custom code that references old tables or views, update it to reference the new datetracked ones.

Before Release 11, tax information was stored in descriptive flexfields in PER_ASSIGNMENT_EXTRA_INFO. There were three views: PAY_EMP_FED_TAX_V1,

PAY_EMP_STATE_TAX_V1, and PAY_EMP_LOCAL_TAX_V1. In Release 11*i*, the W4 information has been datetracked. There are four new tables:

PAY_US_EMP_FED_TAX_RULES_F
PAY_US_EMP_COUNTY_TAX_RULES_F
PAY_US_EMP_STATE_TAX_RULES_F
PAY_US_EMP_CITY_TAX_RULES_F

The following new views have been created to support datetracked W4:

PAY_US_EMP_FED_TAX_RULES_V
PAY_US_EMP_COUNTY_TAX_RULES_V
PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_STATE_V
PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_CITY_V
PAY_US_EMP_STATE_TAX_RULES_V
PAY_US_EMP_CITY_TAX_RULES_V
PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_COUNTY_V

Step 2 Complete all Multiple Worksite reporting

This step is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Oracle Applications Online Help
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	PAY_MULTI_WORKSITE

The Multiple Worksite report uses a new generic hierarchy mechanism, which alters the way you represent the enterprise for the Multiple Worksite report. This feature requires additional setup for Release 10.7 users. Complete all Multiple Worksite reporting based on your previous setup.

> **Caution:**   It is critical that you complete this step as the new reporting structure is the only one supported in Release 11*i*.

> **Additional Information:**   See Creating an Establishment Hierarchy in *Oracle Applications Online Help*.

Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Labor Distribution.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Ensure that transactions are summarized and transferred	Required	Application Specialist

Step 1 Ensure that transactions are summarized and transferred

This step is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Labor Distribution User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
Requires Concurrent Manager?	Yes

Summarize and transfer all transactions. See Chapter 11, Summarize and Transfer Payroll Distributions Procedures, *Oracle Labor Distribution User's Guide*.

Manufacturing

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Manufacturing products you have installed.

Oracle Work in Process Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Work in Process.

Task List	Status	Menu Responsibility > Function / Responsibility
1. Close discrete jobs and purge unneeded data – WIP	Recommended	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > WIP / Application Specialist (WIP)

Step 1 Close discrete jobs and purge unneeded data – WIP

This step is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10.7*
	Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11.0
Users must log off?	No
Requires Concurrent Manager?	Yes

To make the upgrade process run faster, close all discrete jobs that you are no longer transacting and that you are prepared to close, and purge all unneeded discrete jobs and repetitive schedules.

To close discrete jobs:

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the WIP function. Then navigate to Discrete Jobs > Close discrete jobs > Close discrete jobs.

To purge unneeded discrete jobs and repetitive schedules:

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the WIP function. To purge discrete data, navigate to Discrete Jobs > Purge Discrete jobs > Purge Discrete jobs. To purge repetitive data, navigate to Repetitive > Purge Repetitive Schedules > Purge Repetitive Schedules.

> **Additional Information:**   See Discrete Job Close, Discrete Job Purge and Repetitive Schedule Purge in *Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10.7*. See also Discrete Manufacturing, Discrete Job Close in *Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11*.

Public Sector

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector products you have installed.

Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Public Sector Financials (International).

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Verify patch set level	Required	System Administrator

Step 1 Verify patch set level

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

Before you upgrade to Release 11*i*, your system must be on Public Sector Financials International V3.3 Patch Set G (1987816). If you have not yet applied this patch set, you must do so now.

2

Category 2 — After You Receive the Software

This chapter describes Category 2 steps — they require unloading new files, but do not affect the use of Applications products at the existing release level. Unless otherwise noted, perform the steps that require a form from the "old" APPL_TOP, and steps that require a SQL*Plus script from the "new" APPL_TOP.

The following upgrade tasks are discussed in this chapter:

Environment

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the Database Upgrade, the Applications Technology, or the product-specific steps.

> **Note:** On Windows platforms, Release 11*i* application tier components (forms server, Web server, concurrent processing server, and administration server) must be installed on nodes that do not have existing Release 10.7 or Release 11.0 installations. If you install Oracle Applications 11*i* on a node that has existing Applications 10.7 or 11.0 components, the registry settings will be changed and those components will no longer be usable.

Environment Preparation Tasks

Perform the following tasks to prepare your environment for the upgrade.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Run Rapid Install	Required	Database Administrator/System Administrator
2.	Set environment variables and add custom settings	Required	Database Administrator/System Administrator
3.	Apply upgrade patches	Required	Database Administrator/System Administrator

Step 1 Run Rapid Install

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Installing Oracle Applications*
Users must log off?	No

Rapid Install sets up the technology stack, creates all necessary file systems for the application tier components (APPL_TOP and Applications technology stack ORACLE_HOME), and creates the new ORACLE_HOME for the Applications database. There is no need to relink executables or generate forms, reports, and message files.

Go to Chapter 1 of *Installing Oracle Applications* and follow the instructions. Then, go to Chapter 4 and follow the steps for upgrading with Rapid Install. When directed to do so, return to the tasks in this book and continue with the pre-upgrade steps.

Step 2 Set environment variables and add custom settings

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

Rapid Install creates APPS<CONTEXT_NAME>.env (UNIX) or APPS<CONTEXT_NAME>.cmd (Windows) to set up the Applications environment, including the technology stack. Set the necessary environment variables before you run AutoPatch or any of the AD utilities. Log in as the default Applications user and from the new APPL_TOP, run:

UNIX (from a Bourne shell):

```
$. APPS<CONTEXT_NAME>.env
```

Windows:

```
C:\> APPS<CONTEXT_NAME>.cmd
```

> **Additional Information:** See *Oracle Applications Concepts*. See also *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

Rapid Install also sets environment variables (such as JAVA_TOP, OA_JRE_TOP, CLASSPATH, OAH_TOP, and OAD_TOP) in $APPL_TOP/admin/adovars.env (UNIX), or in %APPL_TOP%\admin\adovars.cmd (Windows registry). If you have customized variables in adovars.env or adovars.cmd, you may need to edit this file for all servers (except the database server) to define these environment variables and add any other customized settings, including custom application basepath variables.

> **Note:**   Settings in adovars.env or adovars.cmd affect all
> Applications product groups using this APPL_TOP. If you wish to
> define database-specific customizations, add logic to ensure the
> settings are executed only for the relevant product group. UNIX
> users can also add the logic to the end of the main environment file,
> after the call to adovars.env. However, this logic must be re-applied
> any time the main environment file is regenerated.

Step 3 Apply upgrade patches

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	AutoPatch (*Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*)
Users must log off?	No

Using AutoPatch in *pre-install mode*, apply any family consolidated upgrade patches
listed in the most current *Oracle Applications Release Notes*. Do not apply the AD
minipack at this time.

Database

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you
perform the Applications Technology steps or the product-specific steps.

Database Upgrade Tasks

Perform the following tasks to prepare your database for the upgrade.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Validate APPS schema(s)	Recommended	Database Administrator/System Administrator
2.	Verify custom index privileges	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator

Step 1 Validate APPS schema(s)

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	AD Administration (*Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*)
Users must log off?	No

Follow the instructions in this step to generate a list of invalid objects (<APPS schema
name>.lst) in the database.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7:

Run the following script.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> \
@$APPL_TOP/admin/preupg/advrf107.sql <APPS username> <AOL username>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> \
@%APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg\advrf107.sql <APPS username> <AOL username>
```

If you are upgrading from Release 11.0:

To create a list of invalid objects, run Validate APPS Schema(s) from the Maintain Database Objects menu in AD Administration from the old APPL_TOP.

For both releases:

Review the list and take corrective action as indicated. Then, run the Compile APPS schema(s) option from the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in AD Administration to compile the invalid objects. Correct all problems in the report before you continue with the upgrade.

> **Additional Information:** See AD Administration in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

Step 2 Verify custom index privileges

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

If a schema owns a custom index on an Oracle Applications table, ensure that the schema has privileges to drop the custom indexes. ODF Comparison may try to drop custom indexes when it maintains Oracle Applications tables. Use the following command to identify schemas that may cause problems:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afindxpr.sql <APPLSYS>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afindxpr.sql <APPLSYS>
```

The afindxpr.sql script creates two files: afpregdi.lst and afpregdi.sql. The afpregdi.lst file lists custom indexes with a different owner. Use afpregdi.sql to grant DROP ANY INDEX privileges for any TABLE_OWNERs listed. If the file is empty, no further action is required.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpregdi.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpregdi.sql
```

Applications Technology Products

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the product-specific steps.

System Administration Tasks

Perform the following tasks for System Administration.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Restrict access to administration directory – all servers except database	Recommended	Database Administrator / System Administrator
2. Purge old concurrent requests	Recommended	System Administrator

Step 1 Restrict access to administration directory – all servers except database

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

Some AutoUpgrade output, such as log and restart files, contains passwords to ORACLE accounts related to Oracle Applications, including the SYSTEM account. We recommend that you restrict access to the administration directory that contains these files. Typically, you need to do so only in cases where users require access to the servers for other reasons. Run this step from the new APPL_TOP. Repeat on all servers where you intend to run AutoUpgrade or AutoPatch.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP
$ chmod 700 admin
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%
C:\> attrib +R admin
```

> **Note:**   Retain log and restart files online until you have implemented your products and tested them thoroughly. Oracle Support Services may need access to these files if you encounter problems implementing or using your system.

Step 2 Purge old concurrent requests

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*
Users must log off?	No
Concurrent Manager?	Yes

To purge concurrent requests, run the Purge Concurrent Requests and/or Managers report (Requests > Run > Submit Request) from the old APPL_TOP in either AGE (number of days old) or COUNT (number of old requests to retain) mode.

> **Additional Information:** See Purge Concurrent Request and/or Manager Data Program in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*.

Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Indicate use of FlexBuilder process for Account Generator	Conditionally Required	System Administrator

Step 1 Indicate use of FlexBuilder process for Account Generator

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide, Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide, Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

Perform this step to use the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process for a particular Workflow Account Generator item type. This process replicates the FlexBuilder customizations from Release 10.7.

AutoUpgrade scripts update the FlexBuilder rules. The Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process contains the logic from the custom FlexBuilder rules. It contains a function that retrieves the necessary item attribute values (corresponding to raw parameters in FlexBuilder) and calls PL/SQL functions to create the code combination. Apply patch 1570300, then run afffcfb.sql to check for inconsistencies:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffcfb.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffcfb.sql
```

Review afffcfb.out for data inconsistencies. You may be able to use the UPDATE statement in afffcfb.sql to fix the data. Note the following codes and meanings:

FB: FlexBuilder	KFF: Key Flexfield
Form-F: FNDFBRFP form (FlexBuilder functions)	Form-P: FNDFBMPA form (FlexBuilder parameters)
Responsibility: Application Developer	Responsibility: Application Developer
Navigation path: Flexfield > FlexBuilder > Function	Navigation path: Flexfield > FlexBuilder > Parameter
Form-A: FNDFBMAS form (FlexBuilder assignments)	Form-K: FNDFFMIS form (FlexBuilder segments)
Responsibility: Application Developer	Responsibility: System Administrator
Navigation path: Flexfield > FlexBuilder > Assign	Navigation path: Application > Flexfield > Key > Segments

> **Caution:** The upgrade may fail if it contains data inconsistencies.

Financials

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financials products you have installed.

Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle General Ledger.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Review daily rates	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (GL) / Database Administrator
2. Revise custom programs that automatically load daily rates	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Review daily rates

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	GL_REVIEW_DAILY_RATES

Perform this step if you maintain daily rates for more than one set of books with the same functional currency in the same Release 10.7 Applications installation.

In this release, a single set of daily rates is maintained for each Applications instance. If you have set up multiple sets of books in a single Release 11*i* Applications installation, you must use the same set of daily rates for each set of books.

During the upgrade, AutoUpgrade analyzes the daily rates maintained in each set of books. For each date for which daily rates are maintained, it looks for rate conflicts — instances where the From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type are the same in more than one set of books, but where the daily rate differs.

If there are no conflicts, all daily rates for that combination of From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type from all of the sets of books are transferred into the new daily rate set. If conflicts are found, no rates are transferred. This process is repeated for each combination of From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type for which you maintain daily rates in your sets of books.

> **Note:** Descriptive flexfields defined for daily rates are not transferred during the upgrade. To retain descriptive flexfields, complete Step 1 of the Oracle General Ledger Tasks in Chapter 5.

In Step 1 of the Oracle General Ledger Tasks in Chapter 5, the migration script requires you to specify one of two options for handling conflicts.

> **Caution:** Review the daily rates carefully before the upgrade so you can resolve conflicts after the upgrade.

- Choose daily rates from 1 set of books to use for all sets of books (Option 1)

  For example, assume there are 2 sets of books in one Release 10.7 Applications installation. Each maintains daily rates for converting German marks to U.S. dollars (DM to USD), rate type Corporate. Assume the rates are:

Day	Rate for Set of Books 1	Rate for Set of Books 2
01-DEC-1999	.5757	.576
02-DEC-1999	.5759	.576
03-DEC-1999	.5761	.576
04-DEC-1999	.5763	.576
05-DEC-1999	.5765	.577

  You might choose to use the daily rates from Set of Books (SOB) 1 for both sets of books. If so, the installation converts German marks to U.S. dollars using these rates. The SOB 2 rates are not retained.

- Migrate one set of rates to a new rate type (Option 2)

  Using the same assumptions as the previous example, you can keep the daily rates from both sets of books by migrating one set of rates to a new rate type.

To review daily rates before the upgrade:

1. Run the Daily Rates Conflict report from your new APPL_TOP for summary information:

    UNIX:

    ```
    $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
    $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpp.sql
    ```

    Windows:

    ```
    C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
    C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpp.sql
    ```

2. Review any conflicting rates online in each set of books to identify the nature of the conflict. Alternatively, run the Daily Rates Listing for each set of books and compare the reports manually.

    For example, you can instruct the post-upgrade script to migrate all the daily rates maintained in SOB 2 to a new rate type, Corp2. Then, you can instruct the script to migrate all daily rates maintained in SOB 1 to the rate type Corporate.

    > **Note:** The script you run to produce the Daily Rates Conflict report *after* the upgrade is different from the script in this step.

Step 2 Revise custom programs that automatically load daily rates

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

Requirement	Explanation
TUMS Step Key?	GL_REVISE_DAILY_RATES_LOAD

Perform this step *only if* you currently use a custom process to load daily rates into Oracle General Ledger Release 10.7.

This release contains an open interface table (GL_DAILY_RATES_INTERFACE) for automatically loading daily rates. If you use a custom process to automatically populate the GL_DAILY_CONVERSION_RATES table, modify the process to use the new interface table. After the upgrade, test the customized loading process to ensure the daily conversion rates are being loaded correctly.

> **Caution:** Loading daily rates directly into the GL_DAILY_RATES table can corrupt GL data.

> **Additional Information:** See Entering Daily Rates in *Oracle Applications General Ledger User's Guide*.

Global Accounting Engine Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Global Accounting Engine.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Update accounting data model	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
2. Ensure that transactions are translated	Required	Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)
3. Calculate balances	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
4. Close all accounting periods	Required	Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)

Step 1 Update accounting data model

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AX_UPDATE_ACCOUNTING_DATAMODEL

In prior releases, a single transaction in the primary set of books could contain multiple accounting sequence IDs. However, a transaction in the MRC reporting sets of books could contain only a single accounting sequence ID. Now, you can assign categories to the same event types for both the primary and MRC reporting sets of books, so that transactions in the MRC reporting sets of books can contain multiple accounting sequence IDs.

The upgrade provides complete functionality for this change. However, if you applied patch 1257205 (in patch set 11.0.AX.F, or later) in Release 11.0 to upgrade to the new accounting model, use AutoPatch in pre-install mode to apply patch 1746184 to update the Release 11.0 files.

To verify the status of the data model update, type this command:

```
sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> desc AX_SLE_LINES:
```

If the application_id and set_of_books_id columns exist and are reported as NOT NULL columns, you have upgraded to the new 11.0 accounting data model.

Step 2 Ensure that transactions are translated

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	AX_ENSURE_TRANS_ARE_TRANS

Submit the AX Posting Manager for all applications and sets of books. To check the concurrent log file for the Posting Manager for events that were not translated or that were translated in error, run axxpre01.sql from the new APPL_TOP. The output is ordered by application, set of books, translation status, event type, and transaction number.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre01.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre01.sql
```

Review the axxpre01.lst output file and verify that none of the untranslated events need to be translated.

> **Note:**   All Payables and Inventory events must be translated prior to the upgrade. All Receivables events with an accounting date less than or equal to the upgrade cutoff date must also be translated. However, Receivables events that are related to future-dated revenue recognition transactions may be translated as of their accounting date (NON_CASH_UPDATE event type).

Step 3 Calculate balances

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	AX_CALCULATE_BALANCES

If you applied the balance calculation update in Release 10.7, omit this step. If you did not, calculate the balances for all accounting lines now.

Verify balance calculation update:

Run the following script from the new APPL_TOP.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre02.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre02.sql
```

If the script reports an upgraded balance calculation, no further action is required.

Calculate balances:

If the script reports that the balance calculation was not upgraded:

1. Submit balance reports.

   Submit balance reports for the latest period for each application and for each set of books that uses the Global Accounting Engine.

Report Name	Description
Supplier Balance by Account/Accounting Flexfield	Accounting Flexfield report (use AX Payables Supervisor responsibility)
Customer Balance by Account/Accounting Flexfield	Accounting Flexfield report (use AX Receivables Supervisor responsibility)
Organization Balance by Account/Accounting Flexfield	Accounting Flexfield report (use AX Inventory Supervisor responsibility)

   Note that in Release 10.7, balances can run for only one year at a time. All balances for the year are recalculated each time that you run the report. If new transactions were created for a prior year, run a balance calculation for that year and again for each subsequent year.

2. Update accounting lines.

   Update the accounting lines after the upgrade. See Step 3 in the Global Accounting Engine Tasks in Chapter 5.

Step 4 Close all accounting periods

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Payables User's Guide, Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Inventory User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	AX_CLOSE_AP_PERIODS

In sets of books using the Global Accounting Engine, close all prior periods in Oracle Payables, Receivables, and Inventory, and all current and future periods to prevent transactions during the upgrade. Perform this step from the old APPL_TOP. See Step 3 of the Oracle Cost Management Tasks in Chapter 3.

> **Additional Information:** See Closing an Accounting Period and Opening and Closing Accounting Periods in *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*. See also Maintaining Accounting Periods in *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Payables.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Update supplier/supplier site bank data for multiple supplier banks	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist/ Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Choose payment method for future-dated payments	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist/ Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Enable recoverable tax option	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist/ Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1 Update supplier/supplier site bank data for multiple supplier banks

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AP_UPDATE_SUPPLIER_AND_BANK_SITE

Complete this step only if you have existing supplier and supplier site remit-to bank information.

AutoUpgrade transfers supplier bank data from PO_VENDORS and PO_VENDOR_ SITES_ALL tables to the AP_BANK_BRANCHES, AP_BANK_ACCOUNTS_ALL, and AP_BANK_ACCOUNT_USES_ALL tables. Identify bank data that must be added to the supplier records so that the upgrade can create corresponding records in the banks tables. Then, update the supplier records with the required data.

Review existing supplier information:

Run apmsbrep.sql from the new AP_TOP in the database user you want to upgrade:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apmsbrep.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apmsbrep.sql
```

The script produces a report (apmsbrep.lst) that shows what the upgrade is going to do, including the supplier bank information to be transferred, the bank records to be created, and the records that will not be transferred because required values are missing. Review the report to determine whether to update supplier bank information before it is transferred. If no rows are returned, no further action is necessary.

Update supplier bank information:

Supplier bank information cannot be transferred without a value for the following required columns: bank, branch, and account number. Update the information for these columns from the application window or by running the b747306a script.

- From the application window

  Character-mode: use the Bank Accounts region of the Enter Vendor form (\Navigate Vendors Entry).

  GUI: choose Suppliers > Entry and use the Bank region of the Suppliers window. Then, choose Suppliers > Entry and click the Sites button. Use the Bank Accounts region of the Supplier Sites window to make the updates. After the upgrade, you cannot access bank information from the GUI Suppliers window.

- Using 747306

  If you have a large number of supplier records that have no value for bank number and/or branch number, you can request patch 747306. It contains b747306a (provides temporary values so the upgrade can transfer these records) and b747306b (runs after the upgrade to reset the values to null).

Step 2 Choose payment method for future-dated payments

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	AP_CHOOSE_PAYMENT_METHOD

Perform only if you use future-dated payments or manual future-dated payments.

Future Dated and Manual Future Dated payment method types have been replaced with the Check, EFT (Electronic), Wire, or Clearing payment types. The apboepre.sql script populates a temporary table that the upgrade uses to update the future payment method on existing invoices, payments, and payment formats.

Enter the new payment method for the Future Payment method and for the Manual Future Dated payment method at the prompt. Run this script only once from the new APPL_TOP.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apboepre.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apboepre.sql
```

If you do not run this script, AutoUpgrade automatically replaces Future Dated with EFT (Electronic) and Manual Future Dated with Check.

Step 3 Enable recoverable tax option

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

If you have NO recoverable tax in ANY operating unit, omit this step.

In order to set up recoverable taxes in Step 3 of the Oracle Payables Tasks in Category 6, set the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials flag to Y now. This option affects the way tax lines are flagged as recoverable or nonrecoverable, the way accounting entries are created during the upgrade, and the way data is populated in Recovery Rate.

Perform this task for any operating unit where tax has been considered recoverable (for example, VAT or GST) in the past, or will be in the future.

Add recoverable tax flag:

To add the NON_RECOVERABLE_TAX_FLAG column to the FINANCIALS_ SYSTEM_PARAMS_ALL table, run apaltfsp.sql from the new APPL_TOP. Run this script only once.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaltfsp.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaltfsp.sql
```

Enable recoverable tax option:

Choose the appropriate script to set the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option to Yes. When you set up recoverable taxes in Step 3 of the Oracle Payables Tasks in Category 6, the tax codes are updated to be 100% recoverable and the TAX_ RECOVERABLE_FLAG for each of the existing tax lines is set to Y (100% recoverable).

> **Caution:** Set the Enable Recoverable Tax option to Y for all operating units that require recoverable tax. If you do not, accounting entries will be created incorrectly.

For single operating units that use recoverable tax, or multiple operating units that ALL use recoverable tax, run the following script *once* to update all operating units:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre2.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre2.sql
```

For multiple operating units with different tax recovery structures, run the following script for *each* operating unit that uses recoverable tax:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre1.sql <org_id>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre1.sql <org_id>
```

Oracle iPayment Tasks

Perform the following Oracle iPayment tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Configure payees and payment systems	Required	Applications Specialist (iPayment)

Step 1 Configure payees and payment systems

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle iPayment Concepts and Procedures Guide*
Users must log off?	No

The upgrade migrates Release 3i transaction data for payees and payment systems that exist in Release 11i. Before the upgrade, the payees and payment systems must be configured in iPayment, according to the steps outlined in the *Oracle iPayment Concepts and Procedures Guide*.

Your Release 11i payees should have a payee ID that is the same as the corresponding Release 3i merchant names to migrate the data. Release 11i payment systems should also have the same suffixes as the Release 3i vendors.

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Record truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules	Required	All/ System Administrator
2. Move government uniform invoice information for each organization	Required	Taiwan/ System Administrator
3. Move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers	Recommended	Taiwan/ System Administrator
4. Record uniform numbers for your company	Recommended	Taiwan/ System Administrator
5. Record Canadian tax setup	Conditionally Required	Canada/ System Administrator
6. Print tax rebate and rule listings	Recommended	Canada/ Application Specialist

Step 1 Record truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7SC Production 16.1 (or higher) or 11.0** upgrades (**All Countries**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JA_RECORD_TRUNCATED_LOOKUPS

During the upgrade, lookup codes longer than 30 bytes are truncated and duplicate lookup code meanings are renamed. No seeded codes are affected. If customized modules reference these lookup codes or lookup code meanings, you may need to modify the migrated lookups or the customized modules. See Step 1 of the Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks in Category 4.

Run this script from the new APPL_TOP to identify the affected lookup codes and lookup code meanings:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jamlsmck.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jamlsmck.sql
```

> **Note:** The upgrade does not migrate obsolete lookups. Refer to the *Product Update Notes* for Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific.

Step 2 Move government uniform invoice information for each organization

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades (**Taiwan**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JA_MOVE_GOVT_INVOICE_INFO

All previous Oracle Financials for Taiwan windows are now obsolete. During the upgrade, export certificate and other government uniform invoice information, except miscellaneous invoices, is moved to either globalization flexfields or Oracle Receivables windows. To record the existing government uniform invoice information, run jatwupg1.sql, and review the output (<Org ID>jatwupg1.lst).

To record existing government uniform invoice information:

Run jatwupg1.sql by typing:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg1.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg1.sql
```

To move government uniform invoice information:

All government uniform invoice attributes are assigned to transactions. Use jatwupg2.sql to migrate invoice format data.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg2.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg2.sql
```

Review output in <Org ID>jatwupg2.log. The script performs the following actions:

- Updates only complete transactions in closed periods. If there are incomplete transactions in a current open period after the upgrade, enter a transaction source in the Transaction window.

- Moves government uniform invoice information defined in the Define Uniform Invoices/Sales Receipts window to the Transactions window and its globalization flexfield. The following table shows the field mapping:

10.7 or 11.0 Field Name (Define Uniform Invoices/Sales Receipts)	Release 11i Field Name (Transactions)
Invoice Format	Invoice Format (hidden segment in globalization flexfield)
Uniform Invoice Word + Uniform Invoices/Sales No	Legacy Uniform Invoice (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Void	Status (base product field in the More alternate name region)
Wine/Cigarette	Wine/Cigarette (segment in the globalization flexfield)

> **Note:** Because the transaction date is used as the government uniform invoice date, the uniform invoice date is not migrated.

- Moves export certificate information that was entered in the Define Zero-rate Uniform Invoices in Release 10.7 or 11.0 to the Transactions window globalization flexfield. The following table shows the field mapping:

Release 10.7 or 11.0 Field Name (Define Zero-Rate Uniform Invoices)	Release 11i Field Name (Transactions)
Number	Export Certificate Number (segment in globalization flexfield)
Name	Export Name (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Export Method	Export Method (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Export Date	Export Date (segment in the globalization flexfield)

Step 3 Move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades (**Taiwan**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JA_MOVE_SUPPLIER_UNIFORM_NUM

Previously, supplier uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) were stored in the globalization flexfield of the Suppliers window. In Release 11*i*, the Suppliers window contains both Taxpayer ID and Tax Registration Number fields. Record existing supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers so you can redefine the numbers after the upgrade, and move the supplier uniform numbers from the Suppliers window globalization flexfield to the Suppliers window Taxpayer ID field.

Record existing supplier uniform numbers:

Run jatwupg5.sql as follows:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg5.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg5.sql
```

Review output in jatwupg5.lst and keep the file for your records.

Move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers:

Use the jatwupg6.sql script to transfer the supplier uniform numbers (taxpayer ID) from the Uniform Number globalization flexfield segment to the Taxpayer ID field of the Suppliers window. The script does not update the Taxpayer ID field unless it is *blank*, so make sure there is no data in this field.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg6.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg6.sql
```

Step 4 Record uniform numbers for your company

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades (**Taiwan**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Taiwan*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JA_RECORD_COMPANY_UNIFORM_NUM

In previous releases, uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) were defined in the System Options window globalization flexfield. In Release 11*i*, they are defined in the Locations window (Human Resources). Run the following script to record these

numbers so that you can re-enter them in Step 1 of the Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks in Category 6. The <SID> is the value of the $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK (UNIX) or ORACLE_SID or LOCAL (Windows).

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @JA_TOP/admin/sql/jatwupg7.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%JA_TOP%\admin\sql\jatwupg7.sql
```

Review the output in jatwupg7.lst and keep the file to use after the upgrade. It is located in the current directory.

Step 5 Record Canadian tax setup

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10SC Production 16.1 with Multiple Tax Distribution (MTD) update applied or 11.0** upgrades (**Canada**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JA_RECORD_CANADIAN_TAX_SETUP

Input Tax Groups (ITG) replaces Release 10.7/11 Multiple Tax Distributions (MTD) functionality. Run jacaupgr.sql to record tax setup information. Review jacaupgr.lst (in the current working directory) and use information to set up Input Tax Groups.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacaupgr.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacaupgr.sql
```

> **Additional Information:**　See Upgrading to 11*i* in the *Oracle Financials for Canada User's Guide*.

Step 6 Print tax rebate and rule listings

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10SC Production 16.1 with Multiple Tax Distribution (MTD) update applied or 11.0** upgrades (**Canada**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JA_PRINT_TAX_REBATE

To help define recovery rules, run jacarmpr.sql to generate jacarmpr.lst, which displays tax rebate and recovery rules.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacarmpr.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacarmpr.sql
```

Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Financials for Europe.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Update Swedish EFT payment format information	Required	Sweden/ Database Administrator
2. Pay Danish EFT invoices	Conditionally Required	Denmark/ Application Specialist (Financials for Denmark)

Step 1 Update Swedish EFT payment format information

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades (**Sweden**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	JE_UPDATE_SWEDISH_EFT_PAYMENTS

If you have not done so already, apply patch 1658488. It updates payment format information and stores in new fields the information for bank accounts that are assigned to suppliers paid with Swedish payment formats and Swedish foreign payment formats.

If the version numbers of the formatting files are greater than, or equal to, those listed in the following table, *do not* apply the update.

Formatting File	Version Number
JESEPBAI.sql	110.18
JESEPBSI.sql	110.11
JESEPBUT.sql	110.7
JESEPPOI.sql	110.15
JESEPPOU.sql	110.19

> **Caution:** Follow the instructions in the readme file carefully. *Do not perform the manual steps if you have previously applied the update —* if you do, your data will be corrupted.

Step 2 Pay Danish EFT invoices

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades (**Denmark**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Payables User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JE_PAY_DANISH_EFT_INVOICES

Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) has been replaced with Electronic Data Interchange (EDI). If you have invoices that must to be paid with EFT rather than EDI, pay them now. After the upgrade, only EDI is available.

Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Financials for Latin America.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Upgrade Brazilian subledgers data structure	Required	Brazil/System Administrator/Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)
2. Identify and correct duplicate rows in JL_BR_LOOKUPS	Required	Brazil/Application Specialist (Financials for Brazil)

Step 1 Upgrade Brazilian subledgers data structure

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades (**Brazil**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	JL_UPGRADE_BRAZILIAN_SUBLEDGERS

Run jlbrsusl.sql to identify fixes necessary for your system. View the results online or in jlbrsusl.lst. The file is in the current directory, where <SID> is the value of $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK (UNIX) or ORACLE_SID or LOCAL (Windows).

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @JL_TOP/admin/sql/jlbrsusl.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%JL_TOP%\admin\sql\jlbrsusl.sql
```

Step 2 Identify and correct duplicate rows in JL_BR_LOOKUPS

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades (**Brazil**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JL_BR_LOOKUPS_DUPLICATES

The upgrade moves the data in JL_BR_LOOKUPS to the FND_LOOKUPS table. Row descriptions in the FND_LOOKUPS table must be unique up to the first 30 characters.

During the upgrade, lookups are transferred and all descriptions are truncated. Run jlmlsmck.sql to check for rows that are not unique:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlmlsmck.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlmlsmck.sql
```

To correct duplicate descriptions in the JL_BR_LOOKUPS table, from the Brazilian General Information responsibility, navigate to General > Setup > QuickCodes.

Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Projects.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Correct the week ending date and month ending date for MLS	Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
2.	Correct excess revenue amounts data for hard limit funded agreements	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
3.	Correct excess revenue accrued for non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
4.	Correct credit memo invoice dates	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
5.	Correct bill amount data stored on revenue distributions	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
6.	Correct billing hold data on reversing items	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
7.	Correct billable flag data for reversing items	Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
8.	Correct inconsistencies in Cost Budgets and Revenue Budgets	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1 Correct the week ending date and month ending date for MLS

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

You may receive a message while using the Copy Actuals function in the budget form that indicates the data contains an invalid month (ORA-01843). It occurs most often in an MLS environment because the WEEK_ENDING_DATE and MONTH_ENDING_DATE columns in the PA_TXN_ACCUM table are VARCHAR2 datatypes, but they are used to store dates. In an MLS environment, the date stored in these columns may not be in the language used by the database instance as determined by NLS_DATE_

LANGUAGE or NLS_LANGUAGE (if the NLS_DATE_LANGUAGE parameter is NULL).

To find the exceptions, run patxnerr.sql from the new APPL_TOP. It creates a temporary table PA_TXN_ACCUM_ERR to store the records that are in error.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @patxnerr.sql <PA username> \
<PA password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @patxnerr.sql <PA username> \
<PA password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

Then, run patxnsql.sql.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnsql.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnsql.sql
```

The script produces txn_fix.lst, which is stored in the current working directory. The report has two sections:

Section 1 begins with this text: "The following records have been updated in PA_TXN_ACCUM with the New_Week_Ending_Date and New_Month_Ending_Date." This section lists the records with the old and new values for the week_ending_date and month_ending_date columns.

Section 2 begins with the line "Please update the week_ending_date and month_ending_date for the following records in PA_TXN_ACCUM." This section lists the records for which the WEEK_ENDING_DATE and MONTH_ENDING_DATE columns could not be updated.

Update manually any records listed in Section 2. The month must be in the language of the database server instance. After making the corrections, run patxnsql.sql again to ensure that corrections have been made. Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 2 Correct excess revenue amounts data for hard limit funded agreements
This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PA_CORRECT_EXCESS_REVENUE

Perform this step only if you have Project Billing installed.

Run pa620118.sql to produce a list (pa620118.lst) of the project/tasks whose revenue has exceeded the hard limit funding amount. This script may take a long time to run. From the new APPL_TOP:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa620118.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa620118.sql
```

The pa620118.lst report lists the project and task number, agreement number, and the amount by which revenue has exceeded the funding limit. To correct the data, create a write-off revenue event for each excess revenue amount listed in the report.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 3 Correct excess revenue accrued for non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PA_CORRECT_REVENUE_NEG_EXPENDITURE

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items accruing overstated revenue amounts during the Generate Draft Revenue process. Oracle Projects now generates the correct revenue amount. Run pa661335.sql from the new APPL_TOP to report existing overstated revenue.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa661335.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa661335.sql
```

At the prompt, enter Start Project Number and End Project Number to reduce processing time. The script produces pa661335.lst, which lists the project and task number, expenditure type, quantity, and accrued revenue for all expenditure items where revenue is accrued beyond the soft limit. To correct the data, from the old APPL_TOP, enter a Recalculate Revenue adjustment for each of the expenditure items listed in the report.

1. Choose Expenditures > Expenditure Inquiry and select Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Expenditure Items window.

2. Query for the expenditure items you want to correct.

3. Choose Recalc Revenue from the Special menu.

4. Repeat this procedure for each of the listed expenditure items.

Enter Recalculate Revenue adjustments and run the Generate Draft Revenue process (Submit Request > Requests > Run) for each affected project.

> **Additional Information:** See Expenditure Adjustments in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 4 Correct credit memo invoice dates

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PA_CREDIT_MEMO_INVOICE

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

In prior releases, Projects allowed the release of a credit memo with an AR invoice date earlier than the AR invoice date of the original invoice. Oracle Receivables rejects such credit memos during the AutoInvoice Process. Run pa652811.sql from the new APPL_TOP to report existing credit memos with an AR invoice date earlier than the original AR invoice date.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa652811.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa652811.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. Enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. The script produces pa652811.lst, which lists the project number, credit invoice number, original invoice number, credit memo date, and the Receivables invoice number for all credit memos with an invoice date earlier than the original invoice date. To correct the data, update the AR Invoice Date for each credit memo listed. Perform the steps from the old APPL_TOP:

1. Navigate to the Find Invoice window (choose Billing > Invoice Review).

2. Query for the credit memo you want to correct.

3. Change the AR Invoice Date to a date on (or after) the date of the original invoice. Make this change in the Invoice Summary window or by opening the credit invoice.

4. Repeat these steps for each credit memo.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 5 Correct bill amount data stored on revenue distributions

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PA_BILL_AMOUNT_DATA_DISTRIBUTIONS

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

In prior releases, billing amounts were not stored in revenue distribution lines on "Accrue as work Occurs - Bill as work Occurs" projects. This resulted in the Oracle error "ORA-1400: cannot INSERT null value" during the Generate Draft Invoices process. Run pardlrpt.sql from the new APPL_TOP to report expenditure items that contain this error.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlrpt.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlrpt.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. Enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. It produces pardlrpt.lst, which lists the project name, task number, expenditure item ID, expenditure type, quantity, and amount for all expenditure items whose billing amounts should have been stored in the revenue distribution lines. If no exceptional expenditure items are reported, no further action is needed. Correct the data from the old APPL_TOP as follows:

1. Recalculate revenue

    Perform Recalculate Revenue adjustments on the listed expenditure items. Choose Expenditures > Expenditure Inquiry, and enter criteria to find the expenditure items you want to adjust.

    After you adjust the expenditure items, run the Generate Draft Revenue process, from the Submit Request window (Requests > Run), for each affected project.

2. Re-run the Exception report

    Run pardlrpt.sql again. If any expenditure items are reported, go back to the previous step. Repeat these two steps until no expenditure items are listed.

3. Create temporary table

    Run pacrttab.sql to create temporary table pa_bug_644714. It stores the following audit information about the updated revenue distribution lines:

Audit Information	Audit Information
expenditure_item_id	line_num
creation_date	new_bill_amount
old_draft_inv_num	old_draft_inv_item_line_num

From the new APPL_TOP:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacrttab.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacrttab.sql
```

4. Correct the data

   Run pardlupd.sql from the new APPL_TOP. It prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. Enter these values to run this script for a range of projects. *Do not omit any projects*.

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlupd.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlupd.sql
   ```

   > **Additional Information:**   See Expenditure Adjustments in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 6 Correct billing hold data on reversing items

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PA_BILLING_HOLDS_ON_REVERSING

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to manual reversals of expenditure items whose Bill Hold flag was set to Yes. Prior to this upgrade, these items were created with the Bill Hold flag set to No rather than Yes, and therefore the reversals could be invoiced. Run painv.sql from the new APPL_TOP to report expenditure items with this error.

UNIX:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @painv.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @painv.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and an End Project Number. Enter these values to run this script for a range of projects. *Do not omit any projects*.

The script produces painv.lst, which has two sections:

- List of Projects Against Released Invoices. Lists project/top task bill amounts that are incorrectly invoiced, where the incorrect invoices are already released.

- List of Projects Against Unreleased Invoices. Lists projects against which incorrect invoices exist, where the invoices are not yet released.

To correct the released invoices, create top task-level events in the amounts shown in the report for the specified project/tasks. From the old APPL_TOP:

1. Choose Billing > Events select either Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Events window. Query for the project that you want to correct.

2. Choose New to display the Event Details window.

3. Enter the Task Number of the top task listed in the report.

4. Select an Event Type that has an event classification of Write-On.

5. In the Bill Amount field, enter the amount listed in painv.lst for the project and task.

6. Complete the Event Date, Organization, and Description fields. Save your work.

7. Repeat these steps for each overstated amount on the report.

After you create the events, run the Generate Draft Invoices process for the affected projects.

To correct the unreleased invoices, run the datafix script pa858651.sql. This script sets the "bill hold" flag for the reversed expenditure items to Yes and regenerates the invoices for the projects listed. Run the script from the new APPL_TOP.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa858651.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa858651.sql
```

> **Additional Information:**   See Events in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 7 Correct billable flag data for reversing items
This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

This step pertains to expenditure items that were adjusted from billable to non-billable or vice versa. Prior to this upgrade, when these expenditure items were reversed, the

reversing expenditure items were created with the Billable flag set to the original value, rather than the adjusted value.

To correct the flag settings, run pacstrev.sql. This script reports projects that have associated expenditure items in error and indicates which processes you need to run after you run the datafix script (pa882573.sql). Be sure that you run pacstrev.sql before you run pa882573.sql, so you know which processes to run after you correct the data.

To run the reporting script:

Type the following commands from the new APPL_TOP:

UNIX:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacstrev.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacstrev.sql
```

The script produces pacstrev.lst, which contains two sections:

■ Cost Distribution needs to be run for the following projects. Lists projects for which you must run the cost distribution processes after you run the datafix script.

■ Revenue Distribution/Asset Accumulation needs to be run for the following projects. Lists projects for which you must run the Generate Draft Revenue process or the Generate Asset Lines process after you run the datafix script.

The report lists each project and the associated project type.

■ If the project type indicates that the project is a contract project, run the Generate Draft Revenue process for the project after you correct the data.

■ If the project type indicates that the project is a capital project, run the Generate Asset Lines process for the project after you correct the data.

To correct the data, run the datafix script pa882573.sql. Enter starting and ending project numbers when the script prompts for these values.

This script corrects the Billable flag for the reversed expenditure items that are in error, and marks the items for cost recalculation (sets the COST_DISTRIBUTED_FLAG to N). The script also sets the REVENUE_DISTRIBUTED_FLAG to No if either of the following conditions is true:

■ The expenditure item is charged to a capital project.

■ The expenditure item is charged to a contract project with a revenue accrual method or invoicing method of Work, AND the original item was non-billable and has not been revenue distributed, AND the billable reversing item has been revenue distributed.

To run the datafix script:

From the new APPL_TOP:

UNIX:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa882573.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa882573.sql
```

After you run this script, run the required cost distribution, revenue distribution, and asset line generation processes according to the exception report (pacstrev.lst). Use the Submit Request window (Requests > Run).

For the projects that require cost distribution and/or revenue distribution processes, run the Update Project Summary Amounts process. Use the Project Status Inquiry windows to verify the corrected amounts.

> **Note:** The new billable and non-billable summary amounts generated after this datafix are displayed in the earliest open period. This period may be different from the period in which the original expenditure item was reversed.

Perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 8 Correct inconsistencies in Cost Budgets and Revenue Budgets

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects Reference Manual*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	PA_RUN_DATA_FIX_SCRIPT

To correct inconsistencies in the revenue amount attributes for Cost Budgets and cost amount attributes for Revenue Budgets and correct resource-related data that was not properly ungraded, run the scripts as described in this task.

To fix revenue amounts and cost amounts:

UNIX:
```
$ cd $PA_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418823.sql \
  <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418823.sql \
    <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

To correct resource data from previous upgrades:

UNIX:
```
$ cd $PA_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418828.sql \
  <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\patch\115\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418828.sql \
      <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

Logistics

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Logistics products you have installed.

Oracle Inventory Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Inventory.

Task List	Status	Menu Responsibility > Function/ Responsibility
1. Purge unwanted transaction history - INV	Recommended	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory/ Application Specialist (Inventory)

Step 1 Purge unwanted transaction history - INV

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

To purge unwanted transaction data, run the following script from the new APPL_ TOP.

> **Caution:**   Purged transactions do not appear on the Accrual Reconciliation report.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $INV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invtxnpg.sql <purge cutoff date> \
  <organization code> <rows per commit>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %INV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invtxnpg.sql <purge cutoff date> \
      <organization code> <rows per commit>
```

The script requires three arguments:

Argument	Description
purge cutoff date	Only transactions before this date are purged. The date must be in YYYY-MM-DD format. For example, 1992-01-29.
organization code	Transactions for this organization are purged. If you do not enter a code, the script deletes transaction history for *all* organizations.
rows per commit	Depending on the size of rollback segments, you can vary the number of rows that are deleted per commit. The larger this number, the faster the purge, and the larger the rollback segment required.

This script is potentially long-running.

Order Management

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Order Management products you have installed.

Oracle Order Management Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Order Management.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Run Order Import program	Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
2. Run Order Entry Interface programs	Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
3. Close eligible orders	Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
4. Run AutoCreate Install Base program for Service	Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
5. Make sure orders are in a supported status	Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
6. Close open pick slips/picking batches or open deliveries/departures	Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
7. Run the Shipping Interface programs	Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
8. Review Item Validation Org settings	Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
9. Validate inventory organization data	Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
10. Review cycles that may not be upgraded	Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
11. Selectively upgrade active transactions	Recommended	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping

> **Note:** Run the Order Entry Purge program to remove all old data. (This program does not affect Order Management queries.) *Do not purge any Order Entry tables after the upgrade*. Order Management looks at Order Entry for information on upgraded orders/lines. *Make sure there is no unprocessed data in RMA Interface tables*.

Step 1 Run Order Import program

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

The Order Import Interface tables must be empty before the Order Management upgrade. Select Orders, Returns > Import Orders from the menu.

Step 2 Run Order Entry Interface programs

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry/Shipping Reference Manual, Release 10; Oracle Order Entry/Shipping Release 11 User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

All Order Entry interface tables must be empty before you upgrade to Order Management. To prepare the tables, run the following programs *in the order listed*:

- RMA Interface (Orders, Returns > Returns > RMA Interface)

- Receivables Interface (Orders, Returns > Receivables Interface)

- Inventory Interface (Shipping > Interfaces). Enter Inventory interface in the Name field.

    Additional Information: *Oracle Order Entry Reference Manual, Release 10* (Vol. 1, pp. 6-20 to 6-23); *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping Release 11 User's Guide*, (Vol. 2, pp. 7-11 to 7-14)

- Demand Interface (Orders, Returns > Schedule > Place Demand via SRS)

- Service Interface (Orders, Returns > Service Interface)

If you are running Pick Slip Shipping and are prompted to enter a warehouse, do not do so. Have the system administrator change the mandatory parameter to an optional one. From the System Administration Responsibility, choose Concurrent > Programs > Define. Query the program Inventory Interface (OEVINV) and click Parameters. Uncheck the Required check box and save the change.

Step 3 Close eligible orders

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

To speed the upgrade, close all orders that are eligible for closing (even though the Close Eligible status is supported by the Order Management upgrade). Select Orders, Returns > Close Orders from the menu.

Step 4 Run AutoCreate Install Base program for Service

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

To ensure that all data has been transferred out of the Order Entry Service Details Interface tables, change the responsibility to Service. Then, select Install Base > AutoCreate Install Base and run AutoCreate Install Base.

Step 5 Make sure orders are in a supported status

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

Make sure Orders Headers and Order Lines are in a status that is supported by Order Management. Workflow history is not created for closed lines or orders.

Seeded Action	Allowed Status (other than NULL and Not Applicable)	Status Not Allowed	Suggest Action
The following information applies to Orders:			
Booking	All	None	None
Cancel Orders	11- Complete	18 - Eligible	*
Close/Complete	18 - Eligible	None	None
The following information applies to Order Lines:			
Pick Release	4 - Released, 5 - Partial, 18 - Eligible	None	None
Back Order Release	4 - Released, 5 - Partial, 18 - Eligible	None	None
Ship Confirm	5 - Partial, 6 - Confirmed, 7 - Back-ordered Completed, 22 - Back-ordered Partial	18 - Eligible	Ship Confirm the Line
Receivables Interface	5 - Partial, 9 - Interfaced to AR, 18 - Eligible	None	None
Close/Complete	18 - Eligible	None	None
Inventory Interface	5 - Partially Interfaced, 14 - Interfaced	13 - Interface Error	Fix errors and run Interface program
Inventory Interface	None	18 - Eligible	Run Inventory Interface program
Cancel Line	5 - Partial, 11- Complete	18 - Eligible	*
Service Interface	14 - Interfaced	18 - Eligible	Run the Service Interface program
Purchase Release	5 - Partial, 6 - Confirmed, 14 - Interfaced, 18 - Eligible	None	None
Manufacturing Release	18 - Eligible	4 - Released	Run the Auto-create config program
Manufacturing Release	19 - Work Order Completed	20 - WO partially completed	Complete work order
Manufacturing Release	None	21 - WO created	Complete work order
Manufacturing Release	None	23 - Configuration created	Run Auto-create Work Order program
Demand Interface	14 - Interfaced, 18 - Eligible	None	None
RMA Interface	14 - Interfaced, 16 - Partially Accepted, 17 - Completely Accepted, 18 - Eligible	None	None

* Order Entry DOES NOT support defining cycles that include Cancel Action. It DOES NOT provide a program or a form to automatically process orders or lines that are eligible for the Cancel Action. Use the Cancel Orders form to manually cancel orders or lines that are eligible for the Cancel Action.

Run ontexc07.sql to get a list (ontexc07.lst) of Order Entry Orders and Order Lines that are in cycle states that are not supported. These orders are not upgraded.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc07.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc07.sql
```

Step 6 Close open pick slips/picking batches or open deliveries/departures

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

1. Choose the heading that describes the release level that applies to your system and complete the actions listed.

    For 10.7 character mode:

    Back order or ship confirm all open pick slips and picking batches. Navigate > Shipping > Confirm.

    For 10.7 SmartClient and NCA:

    For pick slip-based Shipping customers, back order or ship confirm all open pick slips and picking batches. Select Shipping > Confirm Shipments > Pick Slip.

    For delivery-based Shipping customers, back order or ship confirm all open deliveries and departures. Select Shipping > Confirm Shipments > Ship Confirm Deliveries.

    For 11.0:

    Back order or ship confirm all open deliveries and departures. Select Shipping > Confirm Shipments > Ship Confirm Deliveries.

2. Once you have completed the appropriate action, run wshbdord.sql and follow the instructions in the file output.

    UNIX:

    ```
    $ cd $WSH_TOP/patch/115/sql
    $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshbdord.sql
    ```

    Windows:

    ```
    C:\> cd %WSH_TOP%\patch\115\sql
    C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshbdord.sql
    ```

Step 7 Run the Shipping Interface programs

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

All Order Entry data must be processed from the interface tables before you upgrade. Run the Shipping Interface programs listed in this section in the order listed. Use the appropriate menu path to access each program.

For 10.7 character mode:

Complete these steps for the following Shipping Interface programs in this order listed: Update Shipping Information, Inventory Interface, Receivables Interface. As you complete each set of steps, enter the appropriate program name in the Report Name field.

1. Choose Navigate > Run (or use quickpick)

2. In the Type field, enter *report*, and in the Report Name field, enter the *<Shipping Interface Program name>* (or use quickpick).

3. Tab through the report parameters, and save your work.

For 10.7 SmartClient and NCA and 11.0:

Run the following Shipping Interface programs in the order listed. Use the appropriate menu path to access each program.

Program Name	Menu Path
Delivery-based Ship Confirm Open Interface	Shipping > Interfaces > (Enter *Delivery-based Ship Confirm Open Interface* in the Name field.)
Update Shipping	Shipping > Confirm Shipments > Update Shipping
Inventory Interface	Shipping > Interfaces > (Enter *Inventory Interface* in the Name field)
Receivables Interface	Shipping > Interfaces > (Enter *Receivables Interface* in the Name field)

> **Note:** If the profile option OE:Immediate Inventory Update is set to Yes, the Delivery-based Ship Confirm Open Interface program may close some deliveries and departures by running the Update Shipping and Inventory Interface concurrent processes automatically. However, you should still run these concurrent processes manually as instructed in this step to ensure that all interface records are processed.

Step 8 Review Item Validation Org settings

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

When more than one responsibility is attached to an organization (Operating Unit), all those responsibilities must have the same item validation org settings. Run ontexc05.sql to produce a listing (ontexc05.lst) of the item validation org settings. Use this list to determine which settings need to be changed. If the valid item validation org is set at the user level, these values will not be upgraded.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc05.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc05.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** See *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*.

Step 9 Validate inventory organization data

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*SQL*Plus User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

The wshpre00.sql script validates the following data for *inventory* organizations:

- All organizations in shipping parameters are defined and valid. They must also have an enabled subinventory.

- All organizations are assigned to locations.

To run this script, type the following:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $WSH_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshpre00.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %WSH_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshpre00.sql
```

Review wshpre00.lst. Purge shipping parameters records without valid organizations. Have the application specialist assign a quantity-tracked subinventory to any record that does not have at least one. In addition, define and assign an internal (HR) location for each inventory organization defined in your system that does not already have one.

Step 10 Review cycles that may not be upgraded

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

Order Entry cycles referenced by open orders are upgraded to workflow processes during the upgrade. Some cycles may not be upgraded successfully because:

- the cycle definition is corrupt

- the cycle definition is not supported in Order Entry

- the cycle definition is extremely complex

- there is no exact functional equivalent in Order Management

Run ontexc08.sql to create ontexc08.lst, which lists cycles that cannot be upgraded and suggested actions. If a cycle is not upgraded to Workflow, open orders referencing that cycle *are not* upgraded.

>   **Additional Information:**   See Oracle*MetaLink* (Doc ID: 150511.1).

To run ontexc08.sql:

UNIX:
```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc08.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc08.sql
```

Step 11 Selectively upgrade active transactions

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	ONT_BIFURCATION

You can select some active transactions for upgrade and defer the upgrade of the remaining transactions to a future date. This is a two-phase process. If you want to take advantage of this feature, perform Phase I now. Refer to *Order Management Upgrade Instructions* (Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID 121200.1).

Procurement

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Procurement products you have installed.

Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Purchasing.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Clear open interface tables	Required	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator

Step 1 Clear open interface tables

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
Concurrent Manager?	Yes

Clear any unprocessed records in the Requisitions Open Interface, Purchasing Documents Open Interface, and Receiving Open Interface tables by importing the data into Purchasing. First, check to see whether data exists in the open interface tables. Then, clear the affected tables as necessary.

Determine whether data exists in the open interface tables:

Complete these steps to examine the open interface tables.

1. Log in to SQL*Plus.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<script name>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<script name>
```

2. Run each of the following scripts:

   ■ Requisitions Open Interface (pocntreq.sql)

   ■ Purchasing Documents Open Interface (pocntpoh.sql)

   ■ Receiving Open Interface (pocntrcv.sql)

   If a script returns a number greater than 0, then you have data in that open interface. The following instructions tell you how to clear the data. If the script returns 0, no action is necessary.

Clear rows in the Requisitions Open Interface tables:

Complete these steps to clear Requisitions Open Interface table rows.

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Requisition Import program. To make sure you process all data, you can leave the Import Source and Import Batch Identification fields blank.

2. Choose Reports > Run and submit the Requisition Import Exceptions report. Use this report to see if errors occurred while running Requisition Import. Correct errors and re-run Requisition Import until no more errors occur.

   > **Additional Information:** See Requisition Import Process and Requisition Import Exceptions Report in *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*.

Clear rows in the Purchasing Documents Open Interface tables:

Complete these steps to clear Purchasing Documents Open Interface table rows.

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Purchasing Documents Open Interface program. Choose Reports > Run again and submit the Purchasing Interface Errors Report.

2. Review the Purchasing Interface Errors report and correct any errors. Re-run the Purchasing Documents Open Interface program until no more errors occur. If you are upgrading from Release 11.0.3, you can submit the Purge Purchasing Open Interface Processed Data program to remove all processed data in the Purchasing Documents Open Interface tables. This program does not remove data that is pending.

   > **Additional Information:** See Purchasing Documents Open Interface and Purchasing Interface Errors Report in *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*.

Clear rows in the Receiving Open Interface tables:

Complete these steps to clear Receiving open Interface table rows.

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Receiving Transaction Processor. Then, submit the Receiving Interface Errors report.

2. Review the Receiving Interface Errors report and correct any errors. Re-run the Receiving Transaction Processor until no more errors occur.

3. If you have Advance Shipment Notices with billing information (ASBNs) in the Receiving Open Interface, choose Reports > Run in the Purchasing responsibility to submit the Purchasing Interface Errors report.

In the Parameters window, select Receiving Open Interface in the Source Program field. Use this report to see what errors occurred. Correct any errors and re-run the Receiving Transaction Processor until no more errors occur.

> **Additional Information:**   See Receiving Transaction Processor and Receiving Interface Errors Report and Purchasing Interface Errors Report in *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*.

> **Note:**   If you cannot fix an error, examine the affected data. If it is old or obsolete, you can ignore the error and continue upgrading.

Public Sector

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector products you have installed.

Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Public Sector Financials (International).

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Drop obsolete seed data	Required	Application Specialist
2. Complete current Internal Trading charges	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist

Step 1 Drop obsolete seed data

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 12, 3.1, or 3.3** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	IGI_REMOVE_OLD_SEED_DATA

To delete obsolete seed data, run the following script from the new APPL_TOP:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igipreu.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %IGI_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igipreu.sql
```

Step 2 Complete current Internal Trading charges

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 12, 3.1, or 3.3** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	IGI_ITR_COMPLETE_CHARGE

If you are currently using the Internal Trading feature, ensure that all current charges are complete (with a status of Approved, Canceled, or Rejected) before you apply Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) patch sets.

To list all open charges, run the following script from the new APPL_TOP. The output file is itr_open_charges.lst.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igiitrbu.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %IGI_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igiitrbu.sql
```

To approve cross charges, navigate to OPSF (I) General Ledger > Internal Trading > Approve Cross Charges. To reject or cancel cross charges, navigate to OPSF (I) General Ledger > Internal Trading > Charge Summary.

3

Category 3 — Performing the Upgrade

This chapter describes Category 3 steps — once you begin these tasks, you cannot use Oracle Applications until after you have successfully run AutoUpgrade and completed the Category 4 steps.

The following upgrade tasks are discussed in this chapter:

Applications Technology

Complete this portion of the upgrade before you perform the product-specific steps.

Oracle Alert Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Alert.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Drop event alert triggers in custom schemas	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator

Step 1 Drop event alert triggers in custom schemas

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

Requirement	Explanation
Users must log off?	Yes

To drop all event alert database triggers in custom schemas, run alrdtrig.sql from the new APPL_TOP. Re-create the triggers in Step 2 of the Oracle Alert Tasks in Chapter 6.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @alrdtrig.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @alrdtrig.sql
```

The script displays the following message and then exits SQL*Plus:

```
"Rerun alrdtrig.sql, which is located in the preupg subdirectory of the admin
directory under APPL_TOP, for each custom schema.  If alrdtrig.sql has been run
for all custom schemas, then open each [schema].sql (created by this script),
which can be found in the current directory, and manually delete the drop trigger
statements which do not belong.  Then run the following statement for each schema:
sqlplus apps_username/password @[schema].sql"
```

Review the resulting [schema].sql files in the current directory and delete any drop trigger statements that do not belong. Log in to SQL*Plus and run each [schema].sql file to drop the triggers.

Oracle Common Modules Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Common Modules.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Fix invalid AK data in non-Global Demo databases	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist

Step 1 Fix invalid AK data in non-Global Demo databases

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10SC Production 16.1 (or higher) or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

In this step, you first check for invalid AK data, then you fix the data.

For a non-Global Demo database (10.7 and Production 16.1 or higher):

Run the following script from the new APPL_TOP:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkp16.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkp16.sql
```

Review the output (akchkp16.rpt) for invalid data. If the report indicates a problem, use the appropriate Oracle Application forms to correct the problem. (You can run scripts akfxmrp1.sql and akfxmrp2.sql to correct specific problems as described in Oracle*MetaLink* Doc 184261.1). Continue to run the scripts (from the new APPL_TOP) and make corrections until there is no invalid data.

For a Release 11.0 database:
Run the following script from the new APPL_TOP:

UNIX:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkr11.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkr11.sql
```

Check the output (akchkr11.rpt) for invalid data. Use the appropriate Oracle Applications forms to make corrections. Continue to run the script (from the new APPL_TOP) and make corrections until there is no invalid data.

Oracle Workflow Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Workflow.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Update protection and customization levels of seeded item types	Recommended	System Administrator / Application Specialist (Workflow)

Step 1 Update protection and customization levels of seeded item types
This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide; Oracle Workflow Developer's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

If you customized seeded item types in prior versions of Oracle Workflow, the new seed data may not load properly when you use the Workflow Definitions Loader. To see a list of item types, type the following at any prompt:

```
sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> select ITEM_TYPE from WF_LOOKUP_TYPES
```

For every item type currently seeded in the database, choose one of the following actions:

No Action

If you do nothing, you preserve the existing protection and customization levels of seeded objects and guarantee that any customizations made to the seed data (and preserved) are not overwritten.

Run wfprotrst.sql

Running wfprotrst.sql for selected seeded item types resets the protection and customization level for the selected item type, guaranteeing that the upgrade loads. Prior customizations to the seeded item type are lost, but new data added is preserved. To run the script, type the following from the new APPL_TOP:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wfprotrst <item_type>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wfprotrst <item_type>
```

Run wfrmitt.sql

Running wfrmitt.sql for selected seed item types completely deletes the item type and any associated customizations from the database, so that the corresponding seed item type looks like a new installation. Consider this option only if you have never used the item type in a production environment. Type the following from the new APPL_TOP:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wfrmitt.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wfrmitt.sql
```

> **Additional Information:**   See Workflow Administration Scripts, Oracle Workflow Access Protection, and Using the Workflow Definitions Loader sections in *Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide*.

Financials

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financials products you have installed.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Payables.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Determine exchange rates (MRC)	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Import and purge Payables Open Interface invoices	Required	Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Import and purge Invoice Import Interface expense reports and invoices	Required	Application Specialist (Payables)
4. Transfer all data to General Ledger	Required	Application Specialist (Payables)

Task List	Status	Responsibility
5. Calculate space requirements for new accounting tables	Recommended	Application Specialist (Payables) / Database Administrator

Step 1 Determine exchange rates (MRC)

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications; Oracle Applications General Ledger User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	AP_MRC_EXCHANGE_RATES

To determine exchange rates needed to upgrade existing AP/MRC, run apumccur.sql. Running this script has no effect on Receivables, as it gets Payables exchange rates only for exchange rate fields that did not exist before the upgrade. Run this script for each APPS schema (from the new APPL_TOP). The instructions in the script indicate which daily rates combinations *must* be defined.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apumccur.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apumccur.sql
```

Define the rates from the GL responsibility. Navigate to Setup > Currencies > Rates > Daily. Rerun the script and enter missing rates until no more are reported.

> **Additional Information:**   See Entering Daily Rates in *Oracle Applications General Ledger User's Guide*.

Step 2 Import and purge Payables Open Interface invoices

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Open Interface Import (Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i)*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AP_IMPORT_AND_PURGE_INVOICES

Import and purge all invoices that are in the Payables Open Interface tables.

1. As the Payables Manager, choose Invoices > Entry > Open Interface Invoices.

2. Query all invoices. Import the ones that have a null value in the Status field.

3. To submit the Payables Open Interface Import program, choose Requests > Run. Select Single Request and choose OK. Type *Payables Open Interface Import* in the Request Name field. Enter each source in the Parameters window, choose Yes for the Purge parameter, and click Submit Request.

4. For each completed import process, Payables automatically produces the Payables Open Interface report. Review each report, resolve any outstanding exceptions, and resubmit the import program until you have imported all outstanding invoices.

5. To purge invoice data imported successfully but remaining in the tables, choose Requests > Run, select Single Request, and choose OK. Type Payables Open Interface Purge in the Request Name field. Click Submit Request.

Step 3 Import and purge Invoice Import Interface expense reports and invoices

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Submit Invoice Import, (*Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 10.7*); Payables Invoice Import Program, (*Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 11*)
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AP_IMPORT_AND_PURGE_EXPENSE_REPORTS

Import and purge all invoice and expense report records that are in the Payables Invoice Import interface tables.

From the new APPL_TOP, run the following script:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apuinimp.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apuinimp.sql
```

The script produces apuinimp.lst, which lists for each operating unit any sources for which you must import records and the number of records that must be imported. If there are no records listed, this step is complete.

If there are records listed, follow these steps to import them:

1. In Payables, import the records for each operating unit.

   ■ If you are upgrading from character-mode, navigate to the Submit Invoice Import form in the old APPL_TOP. For each source, submit import and enter the current date as the purge date.

   ■ If you are upgrading from GUI, choose Other > Requests > Run in the old APPL_TOP. In the Submit Request window, select Single Request and choose OK. Submit the Payables Invoice Import program for each source, and enter the current date as the purge date.

2. For each completed import process, Payables automatically produces the Payables Invoice Import Exceptions report. Review each report, resolve any outstanding exceptions, and resubmit the Payables Invoice Import program until you have imported all outstanding records.

3. Purge any remaining records imported successfully but remaining in the tables. Perform these steps from the old APPL_TOP.

   ■ If you are upgrading from character-mode, navigate to the Submit Invoice Import form. Enter the current date as the purge date.

■ If you are upgrading from GUI, submit Payables Invoice Import with a purge date and a user-defined source. Payables automatically purges all successfully imported records, regardless of source.

Step 4 Transfer all data to General Ledger

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Payables (or Government Payables) Reference Manual, Release 10.7*
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AP_TRANS_ALL_DATA_TO_GL

All data in Oracle Payables must be transferred to the General Ledger. If you are using MRC, all reporting sets of books data must be transferred as well. Choose Other > Requests > Run. Choose "Payable Transfer to General Ledger" concurrent program.

Step 5 Calculate space requirements for new accounting tables

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AP_SPACE_REQ_NEW_ACCT_TABLES

The upgrade creates accounting entries for all Payables transactions (invoices and payments). Use the following formulas to estimate the maximum number of rows that the upgrade creates in each of the new accounting tables. Doing so reduces the chances of running into space issues during the upgrade. Once you know the number of rows to expect, you can calculate the space requirements for the tables and their indexes by multiplying by average record length.

Table Name	Calculation Formula
AP_ACCOUNTING_EVENTS_ALL	2 * (number of rows in AP_INVOICES_ALL) + 3 * (number of rows in AP_CHECKS_ALL)
AP_AE_HEADERS_ALL	#_of_SOB * (number of rows in AP_ACCOUNTING_EVENTS_ALL calculated above), where #_of_SOB is the total number of reporting currencies plus 1 **Note**: If you use combined basis accounting, multiply the total number of reporting currencies by 2.
AP_AE_LINES_ALL	2 * (number of rows in AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS_ALL + number of rows in AP_PAYMENT_DISTRIBUTIONS_ALL + number of rows in AP_RECON_DISTRIBUTIONS_ALL) * #_of_SOB

These calculations provide an estimated size for these tables after the upgrade. Have the database administrator ensure that the tablespace(s) that include these tables are sized to handle the calculated size. Failure to do so could cause upgrade failures, and require you to modify tablespaces and restart the upgrade.

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Receivables.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Diagnose and correct pre-existing database problems	Recommended	System Administrator / Application Specialist (Receivables)
2. Reconcile Receivables tax transactions	Required	Application Specialist (Receivables)

Step 1 Diagnose and correct pre-existing database problems

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	AR_DIAGNOSE_DB_PROBLEMS

Inconsistent Receivables data may cause some Receivables upgrade scripts to fail. This step explains how to diagnose problems in the data and fix inconsistencies.

Diagnose problems in the data:

Run ar115chk.sql. It lists inconsistencies, without affecting the data in any way.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115chk.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115chk.sql
```

Review ar115chk.log in the directory where you ran the script. It lists the following types of inconsistencies, as well as suggested actions:

- Applications that have Earned Discounts but do not have an Earned Discount account.

- Applications that have Unearned Discounts but do not have an Unearned Discount account.

- Applications that have a Receivable Account that does not exist in Receivables but is required to create the Gain, Loss, or Currency Round accounting.

- Approved Adjustments for which the corresponding Transactions do not exist.

Fix inconsistent data:

You have two options:

- Manually fix inconsistent data listed in the script output files.

- Run ar115upd.sql to automatically update the missing (null) discount accounts with temporary accounts having a -1 code combination. This script also accurately derives the Receivable accounts needed for Gain, Loss, or Cross Currency Rounding accounting creation, if they are missing. This derivation comes from the

original transaction's Receivable account. The input parameter is the value of utl_file_dir. The output is written to utl_file_dir/ar115upd.log.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115upd.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115upd.sql
```

> **Caution:**   Do not proceed until you have addressed all inconsistent data either manually, or by using ar115upd.sql. All inconsistent data is fixed when ar115upd.log is blank.

Identify changed records (optional):

After you run ar115upd.sql, run ar115vrf.sql to create a list of the changed records.

UNIX:
```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vrf.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vrf.sql
```

Step 2 Reconcile Receivables tax transactions

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*
Users must log off?	Yes

In this release, tax accounting is available for adjustments, discounts, finance charges, and miscellaneous receipts. However, the upgraded version of the VAT Reconciliation report (renamed Tax Reconciliation during the upgrade) does not show the tax accounting for any receipt applications, discounts, finance charges, and miscellaneous receipts that were created prior to the upgrade, because tax accounting was not available for these transaction classes before Release 11*i*.

Print the VAT Reconciliation report for the period up to the date of the upgrade, and use this report to reconcile, for a given period, the tax amounts for a particular tax code with the GL balance of the tax liability account.

Run the report from the A/R responsibility. If you are upgrading from 10.7, run the report from Navigate > Reports > Accounting. If you are upgrading from 11.0, run the report from Reports > Accounting or from Control > Requests > Run.

> **Additional Information:**   See Tax Reconciliation Report in *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*.

Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Partition EFT system formats information by operating unit	Conditionally Required	Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, Switzerland /Database Administrator

Step 1 Partition EFT system formats information by operating unit

This step is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades (**Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Switzerland**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	JG_PARTITION_EFT_SYSTEM_FORMATS

Perform this step only if you are already using Multi-Org functionality.

Add the ORG_ID column to the JG_ZZ_SYSTEM_FORMATS table and partition the table before it is converted to Multi-Org. The partition is created by assigning existing data to an appropriate operating unit so that it is accessible. Perform *both* steps for *each* installation of Oracle Payables.

To add the ORG_ID column:

Run jgzzper1.sql as follows:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @jgzzper1.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzper1.sql
```

To partition the existing data by operating unit:

Run jgzzper2.sql once for every combination of country code and EFT type that exists in the database until each entry is assigned to an operating unit.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @jgzzper2.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzper2.sql
```

Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Projects.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Submit and obtain approval for all timecards entered in PTE or Project Time and Expense	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Correct excess revenue accrued for negative amount events	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
3. Back up custom client extension packages and views	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Submit and obtain approval for all timecards entered in PTE or Project Time and Expense

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Personal Time and Expense System Administrator's Guide; Oracle Project Time and Expense User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	PA_TIMECARD_APPROVAL

PTE and Project Time and Expense are no longer supported. Timecard entry is now performed in the Self-Service Time application (implemented in Step 1 of the Oracle Projects Tasks in Chapter 6). If you used Personal Time and Expense (PTE) in Release 10.7 or Project Time and Expense in Release 11.0 to enter timecard information, submit all timecards entered in the existing application and obtain approval for each one. Do not enter any new timecards until after the upgrade.

Step 2 Correct excess revenue accrued for negative amount events

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

Perform this step only if Oracle Project Billing is installed, and *all* the following conditions are true: you have not applied patch set D (Release 10.7), you have not upgraded to Release 11.0.2 (or later), and you have not applied patch 634580.

Projects now generates the correct revenue amounts during the Generate Draft Revenue process. Run pa634580.sql from the new APPL_TOP to report existing overstated revenue.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa634580.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa634580.sql
```

At the prompt, enter Start Project Number and End Project Number to reduce processing time. The script produces a report (pa634580.lst), which lists the project and task number, event number, and the event amount for all events where revenue is accrued beyond the soft limit. To correct the data, create a revenue write-off event for each overstated amount. From the old APPL_TOP:

1. Choose Billing > Events and select either Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Events window.

2. Query for the project you want to correct.

3. Choose New to display the Event Details window.

4. Enter the Task Number (if you want to create a task level event).

5. Select an Event Type that has an event classification of Write-Off.

6. In the Revenue Amount field, enter the amount listed in pa634580.lst for the project and task.

7. Complete the Event Date, Organization, and Description fields and save your work.

8. Repeat these steps for each overstated amount on the report.

After you create the required revenue write-off events, run the Generate Draft Revenue process from the Submit Request (Requests > Run) window for each affected project.

> **Additional Information:** See Events in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 3 Back up custom client extension packages and views

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

Back up any custom client extension packages and views you have created. Reinstall them in Step 12 of Oracle Projects Tasks in Category 5. Run the backup from the old APPL_TOP. The list of objects that you can customize includes:

File Name	Package Name
PAXPTRXS.pls and PAXPTRXB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Transfer
PAXPIACS.pls and PAXPIACB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Actions
PAXIBCXS.pls and PAXIBCXB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Bill_Cycle
PAXITMPS.pls and PAXITMPB.pls	MyPackageName
PAXICOSS.pls and PAXICOSB.pls	PA_Rev_CA
PAICPCAS.pls and PAICPCAB.pls	PA_CC_CA
PAXICTMS.pls and PAXICTMB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Billing
PAXPOTXS.pls and PAXPOTXB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Output_Tax
PAXPCTS.pls and PAXPCTB.pls	PA_Bill_Pct
PAPARICS.pls and PAPARICB.pls	PA_Override_AR_Inst

File Name	Package Name
PAXTGTCS.pls and PAXTGTCB.pls	PAGTCX
PAPSSTCS.pls and PAPSSTCB.pls	PA_TIME_CLIENT_EXTN
PAPSSDFS.pls and PAPSSDFB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_SST_DFF
PAXPTEES.pls and PAXPTEEB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_PTE
PAXTRT1S.pls and PAXTRT1B.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_RTE
PAXTTCXS.pls and PAXTTCXB.pls	PATCX
PAXTRTES.pls and PAXTRTEB.pls	PAROUTINGX
PAXBSGCS.pls and PAXBSGCB.pls	pa_client_extn_burden_summary
PAXCCECS.pls and PAXCCECB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Costing
PAXDLCOS.pls and PAXDLCOB.pls	PA_CALC_OVERTIME
PAXCCEBS.pls and PAXCCEBB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_BURDEN
PAXCCETS.pls and PAXCCETB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Txn
PAPDFFCS.pls and PAPDFFCB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_DFFTRANS
PACCIXTS.pls and PACCIXTB.pls	PA_CC_IDENT_CLIENT_EXTN
PAPAALCS.pls and PAPAALCB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_autoalloc_pkg
PAPALCCS.pls and PAPALCCB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_alloc
PAPGALCS.pls and PAPGALCB.pls	PA_client_extn_gen_asset_lines
PAPMCECS.pls and PAPMCECB.pls	PA_multi_curr_client_extn
PAPTPRCS.pls and PAPTPRCB.pls	PA_CC_TP_client_extn
PAXGCES.pls and PAXGCEB.pls	PA_client_extn_cip_grouping
PAXORCES.pls and PAXORCEB.pls	PA_ORG_client_extn
PAPMGCES.pls and PAPMGCEB.pls	PA_client_extn_PM
PAWFPCES.pls and PAWFPCEB.pls	PA_client_extn_project_wf
PAXPCECS.pls and PAXCECB.pls	PA_client_extn_proj_status
PAXVPS2S.pls and PAXVPS2B.pls	PA_client_extn_proj_status
PARCWFCS.pls and PARCWFCB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_CAND_WF
PAXBCECS.pls and PAXBCECB.pls	PA_Client_Extn_Budget
PAWFBCES.pls and PAWFBCEB.pls	PA_client_extn_budget_wf
PACECMTS.pls and PACECMTB.pls	PA_client_extn_check_cmt
PAXVPS2S.pls and PAXVPS2B.pls	PA_client_extn_status
PARAAPCS.pls and PARAAPCB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_ASGMT_APPRVL
PARAWFCS.pls and PARAWFCB.pls	PA_CLIENT_EXTN_ASGMT_WF

File Name	Workflow
patch/115/import/US/PAAPINVW.wft	PAAPINVW
patch/115/import/US/PAAPWEBX.wft	PAAPWEBX
patch/115/import/US/PARCANDD.wft	

File Name	Workflow
patch/115/import/US/PARASGMT.wft	PAWFAAPB

Views that can be customized	Views that can be customized
pa_exp_ovrrde_approver_v	pa_online_projects_v
pa_online_tasks_v	pa_online_expenditure_types_v
PA_CDL_BURDEN_SUMMARY_V	PA_COMMITMNET_TXNS_V

Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Grants Accounting.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Verify that all awards have a current, baselined budget	Required	Applications Specialist (Grants)
2.	Run costing and funds check procedures	Required	Applications Specialist (Grants)
3.	Run the Distribute Burden process	Required	Applications Specialist (Grants)

Step 1 Verify that all awards have a current, baselined budget

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	GMS_AWARD_BASEBUDGET_EXISTS

A current baselined award budget is required for every award that has transactions charged to it. If a current baselined budget does not exist for such awards, the award budget balances and the transactions charged to it will NOT be upgraded.

From the new APPL_TOP, run the following script:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $GMS_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsupaud.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %GMS_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsupaud.sql
```

The script produces a report file (gms_upgrade_no_budgets.lst), which lists award and project combinations that do not have a current, baselined budget. Re-baseline and/or establish a current baselined budget for any awards listed in the report.

> **Additional Information:**   For more information, see Budget Entry Procedures in the *Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide*.

Complete and rerun this step until no awards are listed in the report before you proceed with the remaining Grants Accounting upgrade steps in this section.

Step 2 Run costing and funds check procedures

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	GMS_RUN_COSTING_AND_FUNDS_CHECK

Run the GMS costing and funds check procedures for expense reports, straight time labor, and usage. For more information, see the following sections in Chapter 33, Processes and Reports Procedures, *Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide*.

- GMS: Costing and Funds Check on Expense Reports Expenditure Items Procedure

- GMS: Costing and Funds Check on Straight Time Labor Procedure

- GMS: Costing and Funds Check on Usages and Miscellaneous Costs Procedure

- GMS: Distribute Supplier Invoice Adjustment Costs and Funds check

Step 3 Run the Distribute Burden process

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	GMS_DISTRIBUTE_BURDEN

See the following references to run this process:

Release 10.7:

See GMS: Create Summarized Burden Expenditure Items, Chapter 33, Processes and Reports, *Oracle Grants Management User's Guide*.

Release 11.0:

See PRC: Create and Distribute Burden Transactions, Chapter 36, Processes and Reports Procedures, *Oracle Grants Management User's Guide*.

Manufacturing

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Manufacturing products you have installed.

Oracle Cost Management Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Cost Management.

Task List	Status	Menu Responsibility > Function / Responsibility
1. Verify that no uncosted transactions exist – Standard and Average Costing	Required	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost/Application Specialist (Cost Management)

Task List		Status	Menu Responsibility > Function / Responsibility
2.	Run WIP Value report – Standard and Average Costing	Recommended	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost/Application Specialist (Inventory or Cost Management)
3.	Close all accounting periods – Standard and Average Costing	Required	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost/Application Specialist (Inventory)

Step 1 Verify that no uncosted transactions exist – Standard and Average Costing

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Oracle Inventory User's Guide, and Oracle Work in Process User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

To verify that no uncosted transactions exist, check material inventory transactions and WIP pending resource transactions.

If upgrading from Release 10.7 or 11.0:

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to View Transactions > MTL Transactions. Choose WIP and navigate to Pending Resource Transactions. Perform this step from the old APPL_TOP.

If upgrading from Release 10.7 (character-mode) or 10.7NCA:

See View Transactions, *Oracle Inventory Reference Manual, Release 10*, or View Pending Transactions, *Oracle Inventory Reference Manual, Release 10SC*.

Step 2 Run WIP Value report – Standard and Average Costing

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Cost Management User's Guide; Oracle Inventory User's Guide; Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual*
Users must log off?	Yes
Concurrent Manager?	Yes

After you have completed the inventory and work in process transactions, run the WIP Value report for the latest accounting period. At a minimum, run this report for all jobs and repetitive schedules using the class sort and job/schedule sort.

1. From the old APPL_TOP, as the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to Report > Value (WIP Value report).

2. Choose Single Request or a Request Set (the Submit Request window appears).

3. In the Name field, select WIP Value Report (the Parameters window appears).

4. Enter the report parameters and choose OK (returns to the Submit Request window). Choose Submit.

> **Additional Information:** See WIP Value Report in *Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual*.

In Step 1 of the Oracle Cost Management Tasks in Category 5, run this report again and compare the Release 10.7 or Release 11.0 balances with the associated Release 11*i* balances. If you are upgrading from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10.7 10SC, see WIP Value Report in the *Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10SC*.

Step 3 Close all accounting periods – Standard and Average Costing

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Cost Management User's Guide; Oracle Inventory User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes
Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	CST_CLOSE_ALL_ACC_PERIODS

Closing accounting periods summarizes costs based on transactions. Closing periods is *required for sets of books that use the Global Accounting Engine*. And, it is highly recommended for all sets of books.

> **Additional Information:**   See Step 4 of the Global Accounting Engine Tasks in Chapter 2.

Logistics

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Logistics products you have installed.

Oracle Inventory Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Inventory.

Task List		Status	Menu Responsibility > Function / Responsibility
1.	Complete physical inventories in process - INV	Recommended	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory/Application Specialist (Inventory)
2.	Process data in temporary and interface tables - INV	Required	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory/Application Specialist (Inventory)
3.	Run inventory valuation reports - INV	Recommended	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost/Application Specialist (Inventory)

Step 1 Complete physical inventories in process - INV

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Inventory User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

Follow the instructions in the Processing Physical Inventory Adjustments section of the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide* to complete any physical inventories in process. Enter tag counts and perform adjustments for each unfinished process. Perform this step from the old APPL_TOP.

Step 2 Process data in temporary and interface tables - INV

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Inventory User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

Before you perform this step, make sure the background processor is running.

1. Navigate to Inventory > Setup > Transactions > Interface Managers. (For character mode users, the path is: NAV/INQUIRY/TRANS/INTERFACE.)

2. From the Special menu, choose Launch Managers for each manager.

Complete transactions so that no information remains in the temporary (MTL_MATERIAL_TRANSACTIONS_TEMP) table or in the interface tables (MTL_TRANSACTIONS_INTERFACE and MTL_DEMAND_INTERFACE). Run these steps from the old APPL_TOP.

To view pending transactions:

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Inventory function. Navigate to the Find Pending Transactions window (Transactions > Pending Transactions).

2. Enter search criteria for the pending transactions you want to view, and choose Find. You can view the results in the Pending Transactions window.

3. Select a tabbed region to display a type of information: *Error, Location, Source, Intransit*, or *Other*.

To resubmit transactions to the demand manager for processing:

In the Pending Transactions window, select Submit for each transaction you want to resubmit, or choose Resubmit All from the Special menu. Save your work.

> **Additional Information:**   See Overview of Inventory Transactions in *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Step 3 Run inventory valuation reports - INV

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Release 10SC*
Users must log off?	Yes

After you have completed the inventory transactions, run the Elemental Value report, the Subinventory Value report, and if you use intransit, the Intransit Value report. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost responsibility under the old APPL_TOP. Navigate to Reports > Value. At a minimum, run these reports sorted by item and by subinventory. In Step 2 of the Oracle Inventory Tasks in Category 5, run these reports again and validate the Release 10.7 or Release 11 inventory balances against the Release 11*i* balances.

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to Accounting Close Cycle > Inventory Accounting Periods. If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 10SC, see Period Close, *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Release 10SC*.

Order Management

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Order Management products you have installed.

Oracle Order Management Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Order Management.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Repeat Category 2 steps 1 – 10	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping

Step 1 Repeat Category 2 steps 1 – 10

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

If you have not yet performed the Order Management Category 2 steps, or if you have processed new transactions since you completed the steps, perform the Category 2 steps now.

> **Additional Information:**   See Oracle Order Management Tasks in Chapter 2.

Procurement

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Procurement products you have installed.

Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Purchasing.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Modify default MRP profile options	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Purchasing)/ System Administrator

Step 1 Modify default MRP profile options

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7NCA or 10SC** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Purchasing User's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

If you did not use AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7, do not perform this step. If you used AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7 *character-mode*, the Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments window is available after the upgrade. Set these profile options at that time (Step 3 of the Oracle Purchasing Tasks in Category 5).

To accommodate the enhanced sourcing rules and Approved Supplier List (ASL) entries, AutoUpgrade assigns default profile option values for MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set and MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set. You may want to modify these defaults to suit your business needs.

Navigate to the System Profile Values window in the System Administrator responsibility (from the old APPL_TOP). Query for MRP: Sourcing Rule Category Set and MRP: Default Sourcing Assignment Set to make sure that values are provided at the Site level.

To modify MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set:

You can set the MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set profile option to the name of the category set used by Purchasing, or to any other category set. From the Purchasing responsibility, choose Setup > Items > Categories > Default Category Sets. Use the Category set name that appears next to the Purchasing Functional area.

To modify MRP:Default Sourcing Rule Assignment Set:

You can set the MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set profile option to the assignment set used by Purchasing. If you already have a sourcing rule assignment set, you can choose it for this profile option value. If you do not, use the Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments window to create one. From the Purchasing responsibility, choose Supply Base > Assign Sourcing Rules. Create an assignment set name and save it. Then choose this name in the MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set profile option.

> **Note:** Purchasing uses just one assignment set — the one indicated in this profile option. Therefore, AutoUpgrade assigns all newly created sourcing rules to this assignment set name.

> **Additional Information:** See Automatic Sourcing in *Oracle Applications Purchasing User's Guide*.

Public Sector

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector products you have installed.

Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle U.S. Federal Financials.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Drop obsolete objects	Required	Technical Specialist

To upgrade from Version 3.3 of Oracle U.S. Federal Financials, users must apply Patch Set F or higher.

Step 1 Drop obsolete objects

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 2.0 or 3.3** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

Requirement	Explanation
TUMS Step Key?	FV_DROP_OBJECTS

For version 2.0 and 3.3, drop all seed data, obsolete database objects, and indexes. Check the log file fvdrpobj.log for errors.

For version 2.0:

Run the following script.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fv107obj.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fv107obj.sql
```

For version 3.3:

Run the following script.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fv110obj.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fv110obj.sql
```

Marketing and Sales

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Marketing and Sales products you have installed.

Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Apply pre-upgrade patch	Required	Technical Specialist
2. Set profile options	Required	Technical Specialist
3. Run setup data verification scripts	Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Apply pre-upgrade patch

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

Use the following table to determine the correct patch for your system. Then apply the patch from the old APPL_TOP.

If your are upgrading from...	Apply this patch...
Release 10.7	3262062
Release 11.0.x	3262064
Release 3i	3262067

> **Note:** These patches and subsequent steps may write output files to utl_file_dir. Before you continue, ensure that the utl_file_dir parameter is correctly set in the init.ora file. When more than one directory is listed in utl_file_dir, the first directory listed will be used for all output.

Step 2 Set profile options

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

You must set the following profile options before you continue with the upgrade:

Profile	Mandatory	Default	Description
OSM:Forecast Sales Credit Type	No	Quota Sales Credit	For Opportunity Sales Credits
OSM:Compensation Sales Credit Type	No	Non-quota Sales Credit	For Opportunity Sales Credits
OSM:Default Channel	No	DIRECT	For Opportunity
OSM:Default Opportunity Status	No	PRELIMINARY	For Opportunity
OSM:Default Close Date Days	No	150	To close an Opportunity
OSM:Default Opportunity Sales Stage	No	1	For Opportunity
OSM:Default Opportunity Win Probability	No	10	For Opportunity
OSM:Interest Type Master Org ID	No	0	For the MO interest type migration script, which migrates Interest_type/Interest_code/Win_prob/Sales_stage from different orgs to the master org.
OSM:Currency Code	No	USD	Valid currency code. Site-level default is USD.

Step 3 Run setup data verification scripts

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

Requirement	Explanation
Users must log off?	Yes

In order to verify that your setup data is ready for the upgrade, you must run data verification scripts against your installation. Download and run the appropriate patch.

If you are upgrading from...	Apply this patch...
Release 10.7	3510628
11.0.x	3510630
3i	3394567

Each patch creates reports in the first directory listed in the utl_file_dir parameter. These reports may indicate problem data. If so, the report will describe a remedy for the problem. Re-run the patch after making corrections until no errors are reported. The reports in the following table are generated only if issues are found.

Release 10.7 Report Name	Purpose
asxtdtkc.sql.lst	Identify corrupt data for Tasks migration.
asxtditc.sql.lst	Identify corrupt data for Interactions migration.
asxterrc.lst	Identify corrupt data for Territories migration.
cnupgchk.log	Verify completion of Sales Compensation processes.

Release 11.0.x Report Name	Purpose
asxtdtkc.sql.lst	Identify corrupt data for Tasks migration.
asxtditc.sql.lst	Identify corrupt data for Interactions migration.
asxterrc.lst	Identify corrupt data for Territories migration.
asxclen1.sql.lst	Sales Migration Code report.
cnupgchk.log	Verify completion of Sales Compensation processes.

Release 3i Report Name	Purpose
asxtdtkc.sql.lst	Identify corrupt data for Tasks migration.
asxtditc.sql.lst	Identify corrupt data for Interactions migration.
asxterrc.lst	Identify corrupt data for Territories migration.
asxclen1.sql.lst	Sales Migration Code report.
cnupgchk.log	Verify completion of Sales Compensation processes.

As an alternative to viewing the output of each report individually, you can view the concatenated output of each report in the AutoPatch log file.

Service

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Service products you have installed.

> **Caution:** If you are upgrading Oracle Service products, you cannot use the Order Management selective upgrade (bifurcation) option. See Selectively upgrade active transactions on page 2-38.

Oracle Service Tasks

Perform the following tasks *only* for Oracle Service products that you have installed.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Apply pre-upgrade patch	Required	Technical Specialist
2.	Correct issues in Install Base data	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
3.	Clear Oracle Order Entry Service Interface data	Required	Technical Specialist
4.	Set profile options	Required	Technical Specialist
5.	Process data in interface tables for Depot Repair	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
6.	Process data in interface tables for Contracts	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
7.	Remove multiple counter groups	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
8.	Estimate additional tablespace for Oracle Install Base	Required	Technical Specialist
9.	Run setup data verification scripts	Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Apply pre-upgrade patch

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

> **Note:** If you have previously applied this patch for Oracle Sales, you can omit this task.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

Use the following table to determine the correct patch to apply to your system.

If your are upgrading from...	Apply this patch...
Release 10.7	3262062
Release 11.0.x	3262064
Release 3i	3262067

> **Note:** The steps in this section may write output files to your utl_file_dir. Before you continue, ensure that the utl_file_dir parameter is correctly set in the init.ora file. If more than one directory is listed in this parameter, the first directory listed will be used for all output.

Step 2 Correct issues in Install Base data

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off:	Yes

The pre-upgrade patch that you ran in the previous step created a report called CS_BAD_DATA_REPORT.lst in the utl_file_dir directory. This report shows any Install Base data that requires action before you continue the upgrade. It contains the following columns:

Column Name	Description
Source Table	The Oracle Service table that contains the bad data.
Source ID	The primary key ID of the row.
Error Messages	The error message and a suggestion on how to fix the data.

The error messages suggest SQL commands necessary to correct the problem. You can either fix the data using the suggested SQL or use the appropriate forms in Oracle Applications.

When you have fixed all data identified in the report, re-run the pre-upgrade patch that created the report in Step 1 and review the report contents again. When the report contains no records, the Install Base data in Oracle Service is ready for upgrade.

Step 3 Clear Oracle Order Entry Service Interface data

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

To ensure that all data has been transferred out of the Order Entry Service Details Interface table, change your responsibility to Service. Then, select Install Base > AutoCreate Install Base and run AutoCreate Install Base.

> **Additional Information:**   See Run AutoCreate Install Base program for Service in Chapter 2.

Step 4 Set profile options

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

You must set the following profile options before you continue with the upgrade.

Profile Option	Mandatory	Default	Description
Service:UPG Bill to Country Code	Yes	N/A	Used for Bill to address of non-verified customers in Service Requests module.

Profile Option	Mandatory	Default	Description
Service:UPG Ship to Country Code	Yes	N/A	Used for Ship to address of non-verified customers in Service Requests module.
Service:UPG Install Country Code	Yes	N/A	Used for Install address of non-verified customers in Service Requests module.
Service:UPG 3i Installation Date	Yes (if upgrade from 3i or 11.0.x)	N/A	Determines the location of Service data, which depends on whether it was entered using 11.0.x or 3i.
Service:UPG Default Employee for Interactions	Yes (if upgrade from 3i)	N/A	Provides a default value for employee information that became mandatory in the 11i Interaction History module.
Service:UPG Service Request Type	Yes	N/A	Required for creating new service requests to associate with repair records that do not currently have an associated service request.
Service:UPG Service Request Severity	Yes	N/A	Required for creating new service requests to associate with repair records that do not currently have an associated service request.
Service:UPG Service Request Status	Yes	N/A	Required for creating new service requests to associate with repair records that do not currently have an associated service request.
Service:UPG Service Request Owner	Yes	N/A	Required for creating new service requests to associate with repair records that do not currently have an associated service request.
Service:UPG Business Process	Yes	N/A	Required for creating new charge lines linked to repair lines in order to associate RMA information with repair lines.
Service:UPG Transaction Type	Yes	N/A	Required for creating new charge lines linker to repair lines in order to associate RMA information with repair lines.
Service:UPG Time Zone for Contracts	Yes (if upgrade from 3i)	N/A	Used for Contracts records that do not have a time zone value during coverage line or sub-lines creation.
Service:Repair Default Order Type for Repairs	Yes (if upgrade from 10.7)	N/A	Provides a default order type for all 10.7 depot repair estimates. Order type did not exist in 10.7 and is optional in 11i.
Service:Time Unit of Measure Class	Yes	N/A	Used to define time.
Service:UPG Minute Unit of Measure	Yes	N/A	Used to specify unit of measure for minutes.
Service:UPG Hour Unit of Measure	Yes	N/A	Used to specify unit of measure for hours.
Service:UPG Default Service Request Contract	Yes	N/A	Required for associating a contract to an existing or new Service Request. The LOV is filtered for contact type EMPLOYEE.
Service:Inventory Validation Organization	Yes	N/A	Used to upgrade customer products that were manually created in Oracle Service. Set this to a master inventory organization.
Service:CS to CSI Migrate Customer Products Audit Data	No	Yes	Determines whether customer product audit data will be migrated to 11i.
Service: CS to CSI Migrate Party Audit Data	No	Yes	Determines whether contacts or resources audit data will be migrated to 11i.
Service:CS to CSI Migration Stage	Yes	No	Initially must be set to No, meaning that the data is not yet staged for upgrade.
Service:CS to CSI Continue Migration with Errors	Yes	No	Determines whether the 11.5.10 Maintenance pack will fail and stop if any Install Base data cannot be upgraded.

Profile Option	Mandatory	Default	Description
Service:CS to CSI Continue Migrate Systems All Audit Data	No	Yes	Determines whether systems audit data will be migrated to 11i.
Service:Execute Pre-11i Contracts Upgrade	Yes	N/A	Determines whether Warranty/Extended Warranty/Contracts (3i) data will be migrated to Service Contracts 11i.

The **Service:Migration Organization for Employee Service Requests profile option** must be set to contain the name of the enterprise that you define in Trading Community Architecture (TCA) as an internal organization. It is used as the owner of the item instance when it is owned by your own enterprise.

This setting is used only during the upgrade to populate the Party Name field in the Install Parameters form. After the upgrade is complete, all functionality refers to the value defined in the Party Name field, and not the profile option. For example, when you buy and receive an item in Oracle Receiving that creates an item instance, the process that creates it refers to the Party Name in the Install Parameters form to assign the owner for it.

Step 5 Process data in interface tables for Depot Repair

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	CS_DEPOT_INTF_TABLES

Run the following concurrent programs in the order listed to ensure that all items received for repair have been interfaced to Depot Repair.

- RMA Interface
- Depot Repair Control

You must complete any partially completed WIP jobs created for Depot Repair orders.

Step 6 Process data in interface tables for Contracts

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	CS_CONTRACTS_INTF_TABLES

Run the Service Termination concurrent program to ensure that all order lines containing services and any terminated services are processed. After the program has run, there should not be any rows in the CS_TERMINATION_INTERFACE_ALL table.

Step 7 Remove multiple counter groups

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	CS_REMOVE_MULTIPLE_COUNTER_GROUPS

In 3i (3.1.1), you could associate multiple counter groups with an installed base customer product or contract line. This feature is not supported in Release 11i. If multiple associations exist, you must remove them before you proceed with the upgrade. Complete the following steps to identify and remove multiple associations.

1. Run csxctrdu.sql. It creates two reports:

    ■   csxctodu.lst, which lists products in the installed base that have associated multiple counter groups.

    ■   csxctcdu.lst, which lists contract lines with associated multiple counter groups.

    To run the script, type the following commands from the old APPL_TOP:

    ```
    $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
    $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$CS_TOP/patch/110/sql/csxctrdu.sql
    ```

2. Review the reports and decide which multiple counter groups to delete. If the reports contain no data, you can omit the remaining steps in this task.

3. For each group identified for deletion in Step 2, run csxctddu.sql:

    ```
    $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
    $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$CS_TOP/patch/110/sql/csxctddu.sql
    ```

4. Repeat Steps 1 – 3 until all multiple associations are deleted.

Step 8 Estimate additional tablespace for Oracle Install Base

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

You may need to add additional tablespace for Oracle Install Base. To estimate the additional tablespace, double the space used by the following Oracle Service tables:

■   CS_CUSTOMER_PRODUCTS_ALL

■   CS_CP_AUDIT

■   CS_CONTACTS

■   CS_CP_PARTIES_AUDIT

■   CS_CP_REVISIONS

■   CS_SYSTEMS_ALL_B

■   CS_SYSTEMS_ALL_TL

■   CS_SYSTEM_AUDIT

■   CS_CP_PARAMETERS

■   CS_LINE_INST_DETAILS

- CS_CUSTOMER_PRODUCT_STATUSES

- CS_TRANSACTION_TYPES_B

In addition, double the space in the following Oracle Inventory tables and add it to the space you calculated for the Oracle Service tables: MTL_ONHAND_QUANTITIES and MTL_SERIAL_NUMBERS.

Step 9 Run setup data verification scripts

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

In order to verify that your setup data is ready for the upgrade, you must run data verification scripts against your installation. Download and run the appropriate patch.

If you are upgrading from...	Apply this patch...
Release 10.7	3510628
11.0.x	3510630
3i	3394567

Each patch creates reports in the first directory listed in the utl_file_dir parameter. These reports may indicate problem data. If so, the report will describe a remedy for the problem. Re-run the patch after making corrections until no errors are reported. Here are the reports that are generated.

Release 10.7 Report Name	Purpose
cs11sver.lst	Verification report for Service Request profiles and data.
CS11KCNT.lst	Records that fail validation for upgrade.
CS11KRPT.lst	Contracts Pre-upgrade Validation report.
cs00dval.lst	Verifies that mandatory profile options for Depot Repair have been set.
csprpt10.lst	Verifies that the mandatory profile options for Install Base have been set correctly.
csd11preur.lst	Service Request report for Depot Repair.

Release 11.0.x Report Name	Purpose
cs22sver.lst	Verification report for Service Request profiles and data.
cs22GVER.lst	Charges Pre-upgrade Validation report.
CS22KCNT.lst	Records that fail validation for upgrade.
CS22KRPT.lst	Contracts Pre-upgrade Validation report
cs00dval.lst	Verifies that mandatory profile options for Depot Repair have been set.
csprpt11.lst	Verifies that the mandatory profile options for Install Base have been set correctly.

Release 11.0.x Report Name	Purpose
csd23preur.lst	Service Request report for Depot Repair.

Release 3i Report Name	Purpose
cs33sver.lst	Verification report for Service Request profiles and data.
cs33GVER.lst	Charges Pre-upgrade Validation report.
CS33KCNT.lst	Records that fail validation for upgrade.
CS33KRPT.lst	Contracts Pre-upgrade Validation report.
cs00dval.lst	Verifies that mandatory profile options for Depot Repair have been set.
cs33ppbe.lst	Customer Profile Verification report
cs33hrep.lst	Interaction and Territories Validation report
csprpt3i.lst	Verifies that the mandatory profile options for Install Base have been set correctly.
csd23preur.lst	Service Request report for Depot Repair.

As an alternative to viewing the output of each report individually, you can view the concatenated output of each report in the AutoPatch log file.

Database and System Administration

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade after completing the product-specific tasks and before running AutoUpgrade.

System Administration Tasks

Perform the following tasks for System Administration.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Identify potential ORACLE schema conflicts	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
2. Enable SYSADMIN user and password	Required	System Administrator

Step 1 Identify potential ORACLE schema conflicts

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

If you originally installed Oracle Applications with Release 9.3 or earlier, ensure that the IDs for existing ORACLE schemas do not conflict with ones necessary for new schemas created by AutoUpgrade. To identify potential conflicts, run the following script from the new APPL_TOP:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
```

```
$ sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password> @adpuver.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adpuver.sql
```

Any ORACLE ID values listed by the script that are not associated with an APPS schema are potential conflicts, and may result in problems during the upgrade.

> **Note:** If you determine there is a potential conflict, contact Oracle Support Services.

Step 2 Enable SYSADMIN user and password

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

Because AutoUpgrade must access the Oracle Application Object Library ORACLE username using the application user SYSADMIN, ensure that this application user exists and is enabled. SYSADMIN must also have access to the System Administrator responsibility. The name of this responsibility must be System Administrator and it must connect to the APPS schema for its data group. Set the password to SYSADMIN.

To verify this information, go to Security > User > Define and query for user name SYSADMIN. Perform the verification from the old APPL_TOP.

Database Upgrade Tasks

Perform the following tasks to prepare your database for the upgrade.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Shut down application tier listeners and concurrent managers	Required	Database Administrator /System Administrator
2.	Migrate or upgrade database to Oracle9i	Required	Database Administrator
3.	Set up tablespaces	Required	Database Administrator /System Administrator
4.	Set up Net Services – node where database is installed	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator /System Administrator
5.	Run preparatory scripts – node where the database is installed	Required	Database Administrator /System Administrator
6.	Apply database patch	Required	Database Administrator /System Administrator
7.	Run preparatory script – administration node	Required	Database Administrator /System Administrator
8.	Gather database statistics for CBO	Required	Database Administrator /System Administrator
9.	Gather database information	Recommended	Database Administrator /System Administrator
10.	Check SQL*Plus options	Required	Database Administrator /System Administrator

Task List		Status	Responsibility
11.	Verify rollback segment sizing	Required	Database Administrator /System Administrator
12.	Turn off automatic archive logging and Replication	Required	Database Administrator /System Administrator
13.	Disable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
14.	Install XML Parser for PL/SQL	Required	Database Administrator
15.	Back up the database	Recommended	Database Administrator

Step 1 Shut down application tier listeners and concurrent managers

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*
Users must log off?	Yes

Shut down forms listeners, web listeners, and the concurrent managers before you begin the upgrade. Do this from the old APPL_TOP.

Ensure all concurrent processes are complete:

Before you shut down the concurrent managers, check to see that all processes are complete. Navigate to Concurrent > Requests. In the Find Requests window, select All my requests. Click Find. Cancel Pending requests as necessary.

Shut down application tier listeners and concurrent managers:

As System Administrator, choose Administer Concurrent Managers. Navigate to the Control field and select Deactivate.

Step 2 Migrate or upgrade database to Oracle9*i*

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle9i Migration*
Users must log off?	Yes

Follow the steps in this section to migrate or upgrade your database to Oracle9i. Use an 8K block size. See Block Size in Overview and Requirements for more information.

> **Note:** Rapid Install has already created the ORACLE_HOME with the appropriate RDBMS updates for this release.

1. Using Oracle Universal Installer, install the latest certified database patch set in the ORACLE_HOME. Check the Certify section of Oracle*MetaLink* for additional patches that may be available.

> **Note:** Do not perform the database upgrade steps listed in the patch set release notes. All required database objects are created when you run the preparatory scripts later in this chapter.

2. Perform the migration or upgrade using the Oracle9*i* ORACLE_HOME created by Rapid Install. Follow the instructions in *Oracle9i Migration* to migrate the database.

3. Carefully review the information about initialization parameters in *Database Initialization Parameters for Oracle Applications* (Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID: 216205.1). Determine the appropriate parameters and set them in init.ora.

4. Restart the database so that the parameters take effect.

Step 3 Set up tablespaces

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle9i Administrator's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

Before you set up tablespaces, set the init.ora parameter for db_files=500. Then, perform the appropriate steps for both the existing tablespaces and the new product tablespaces.

1. Convert existing tablespaces to local extent management

    We recommend using local extent management to increase performance. To convert all non-SYSTEM tablespaces from Data Dictionary extent management to local extent management, run the following script:

    UNIX:

    ```
    $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
    $ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adtbscnv.pls <SYSTEM password>
    ```

    Windows:

    ```
    $ cd $APPL_TOP\admin\preupg
    $ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adtbscnv.pls <SYSTEM password>
    ```

    This script lists problems and suggests manual fixes. Review the output (adtbscnv.lst), fix problems, and re-run the script until no issues are reported.

    > **Additional Information:**   See Temporary tablespace in Overview and Requirements. See also Managing Tablespaces in *Oracle9i Database Administrator's Guide*.

2. Create new product tablespaces and resize existing product tables

    In this task, you determine your system's tablespace requirements, and create (and resize) the product tablespace. You can choose to begin the conversion to the new Oracle Applications tablespace model, or continue to use the existing model.

    > **Additional Information:**   See Tablespace Model in Overview and Requirements for more information. See also Oracle*MetaLink* document 248857.1.

    - Increase SYSTEM tablespace size

        Verify that the SYSTEM tablespace size is at least 9 GB before you run the scripts in this task. Increase the tablespace size as needed.

    - Determine other tablespace requirements

Run either adgncons.sql (if you want to use the new Oracle Applications tablespace model) or adgnofa.sql (if you want to continue to use the existing OFA-compliant model).

To use the new tablespace model (OATM):

Run adgncons.sql as follows.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AD_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adgncons.sql \
  <APPS username> <APPS password> APPLSYS
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AD_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adgncons.sql \
      <APPS username> <APPS password> APPLSYS
```

Note: The upgrade process populates the new tablespaces with all Release 11*i* objects. *After the upgrade is complete*, you must finish the migration process by moving pre-Release 11*i* objects to the new tablespaces. See Run Tablespace Migration Utility in Chapter 7.

To continue to use the existing tablespace model (OFA-compliant):

Run adgnofa.sql as follows. On the command line, indicate the <MODE> as NEW to create new product tablespaces (tablespaces for existing products are not affected), or ALL to create tablespaces for new products *and* resize existing product tablespaces.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AD_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adgnofa.sql <MODE>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AD_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adgnofa.sql <MODE>
```

Running either of these scripts generates adcrtbsp.sql, which you run in the next step to create the product tablespaces.

■ Create product tablespaces

Review the information in adcrtbsp.sql and specify the location of the data files. Then, run it from the database server as the SYSTEM user to add new product tablespaces and resize the existing product tablespaces (<MODE> = ALL for OFA-compliant systems). This action also automatically converts newly created tablespaces to local extent management.

Step 4 Set up Net Services – node where database is installed

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Net8 Administrators' Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

Follow the instructions in Configuring Non-Oracle Database Services: Configuring Net8 for External Procedures, *Oracle Net9 Administrator's Guide* and the *Oracle9i Enterprise Edition Release Notes*.

Step 5 Run preparatory scripts – node where the database is installed

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

We provide scripts that create objects required by the RDBMS and other technology stack components on the database server. Each script creates one or more spool files and places them in the directory you ran the scripts from. Check the spool file for errors after you run each script.

Script (UNIX)	Script (Windows)	Description
addb920.sql	addb920_nt.sql	Sets up database SYS schema.
adsy920.sql	adsy920_nt.sql	Sets up database SYSTEM schema.
adjv920.sql	adjv920_nt.sql	Sets up database JAVA-related components. *Do not run this script if you have already migrated Jserver, and installed the Java Virtual Machine (JVM). Running this script when JVM objects already exist will corrupt the database*.
admsc920.sql	admsc920_nt.sql	Sets up other database components.
adgrants.sql	adgrants_nt.sql	Grants necessary privileges on selected SYS objects.

1. Create $ORACLE_HOME/appsutil/admin on the database server.

2. Copy addb920.sql, adsy920.sql, adjv920.sql, admsc920.sql, and adgrants.sql (UNIX) from $APPL_TOP/admin to $ORACLE_HOME/appsutil/admin. Or, on a Windows platform, copy the Windows versions from %APPL_TOP%\admin to %ORACLE_HOME%\appsutil\admin.

3. Set the environment to point to ORACLE_HOME on the database server.

> **Note:** Access the database server directly. *Do not* attempt to run any of these scripts using Net Services.

4. Run the preparatory scripts in the following order:

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ sqlplus /nolog
   SQL> connect SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
   SQL> @addb920.sql
   ```

   > **Note:** The addb920.sql script may take a long time to run.

   ```
   $ sqlplus /nolog
   SQL> connect SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
   SQL> @adsy920.sql
   ```

> **Note:** Ignore any instructions to run adsysapp2.sql at this time. You will run this script in Step 7 (on the administration server).

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> @adjv920.sql
```

> **Caution:** Do not run adjv920.sql if you have migrated Jserver, and installed the Java Virtual Machine (JVM). Running this script when JVM objects already exist will corrupt the database.

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> @admsc920.sql <Remove Context> <Default Tablespace> \
     <Temporary Tablespace> <Intermedia Shared Library>

$ sqlplus / nolog
SQL> connect / as sysdba
SQL> @adgrants.sql <APPLSYS>
```

Windows:

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> @addb920_nt.sql
```

> **Note:** The addb920_nt.sql script may take a long time to run.

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> @adsy920_nt.sql
```

> **Note:** Ignore any instructions to run adsysapp2.sql at this time. You will run this script in Step 7 (on the administration server).

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> @adjv920_nt.sql
```

> **Caution:** Do not run adjv920_nt.sql if you have migrated Jserver, and installed the Java Virtual Machine (JVM). Running this script when JVM objects already exist will corrupt the database.

```
$ sqlplus /nolog
SQL> connect SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> @admsc920_nt.sql <Remove Context> <Default Tablespace> \
     <Temporary Tablespace> <Intermedia Shared Library>

$ sqlplus / nolog
SQL> connect / as sysdba
SQL> @adgrants_nt.sql <APPLSYS>
```

The arguments for admsc920.sql and admsc920_nt.sql are:

Argument	Description
Remove ConText	If there is an existing installation of Oracle ConText, remove it by setting this parameter to TRUE. Otherwise, accept the default value (FALSE).
Default Tablespace	Default tablespace for the Oracle *inter*Media schema (CTXSYS is recommended). If the CTXSYS tablespace does not exist, create it. The size required is 10 MB.
Temporary Tablespace	Temporary tablespace for the Oracle *inter*Media schema (TEMP is recommended).
Intermedia Shared Library	Full path name of the Oracle *inter*Media shared library: $ORACLE_HOME/ctx/lib/libctxx9.so (UNIX), or %ORACLE_HOME%\bin\oractxx9.dll (Windows).

Note: If you run this script inside SQL*Plus instead of from the SQL*Plus command line, enter the full path name for the *inter*Media Shared Library parameter. SQL*Plus does not evaluate the ORACLE_HOME variable when used with a parameter.

Additional Information: See *Oracle interMedia, Audio, Image, and Video User's Guide and Reference: Oracle9i Database Migration*.

Step 6 Apply database patch

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

Before you continue with the upgrade, apply patch 3835781 to update/create necessary OWS packages.

1. Create subdirectory $ORACLE_HOME/appsutil/admin/OWS

2. Download patch 3835781 to any patch directory and unzip it.

3. Copy the following files from the directory where you downloaded the patch to the subdirectory you created in Step 1: patch.sql, modplsql/owa/pubmat.sql, modplsql/owa/privmat.sql.

   Caution: Ignore the instructions in the patch readme file. They do not pertain to this application of patch 3835781.

4. Set the environment to point to ORACLE_HOME on the database server.

5. From the directory $ORACLE_HOME/appsutil/admin/OWS, execute the following commands:

```
$ sqlplus / nolog
SQL> connect / as sysdba
SQL> @patch.sql
```

Step 7 Run preparatory script – administration node

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

Run this script from the admin directory under the new APPL_TOP. Make sure you have permission to write to that directory.

```
sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adsysapp2.sql <SYSTEM password>
```

Check the spool file for errors. Invalid packages in the database are acceptable. They are validated when you run AutoUpgrade.

Step 8 Gather database statistics for CBO

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle9i Concepts*
Users must log off?	Yes

This release requires the Cost-based Optimizer (CBO). Use the FND_STATS package (patch 1268797 for *pre-upgrade* use only) to gather database statistics.

> **Additional Information:**   See Cost-based Optimization (CBO) in Overview and Requirements.

Download the update file from Oracle*MetaLink* and apply it using AutoPatch. Then, generate CBO statistics by running the following script from your old APPL_TOP:

For 10.7 UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/patchsc/107/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

For 10.7 Windows users:

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\patchsc\107\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

For 11.0 UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/patch/110/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

For 11.0 Windows users:

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\patch\110\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

Step 9 Gather database information

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle9i Database Administrator's Guide*

Requirement	Explanation
Users must log off?	Yes

The adupinfo.sql script generates a file called adupinfo.lst, which contains information you will need later in the upgrade. Run adupinfo.sql from the new APPL_TOP.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adupinfo.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adupinfo.sql
```

> **Additional Information:**   See Analyzing the Database in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

Step 10 Check SQL*Plus options

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

You should have set the SQL*Plus PAUSE option OFF and the NEWPAGE option to a value other than 0 (zero). Use the adupinfo.lst file you created in Step 9 to verify these values.

Step 11 Verify rollback segment sizing

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle9i Database Administrator's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

Use the segment sizing information in the adupinfo.lst file created in Step 9 to verify that rollback segments are large enough to handle upgrade data volume. Configure segments to avoid a "Snapshot too old" error, typically, 1 segment per worker with an extent size of 1 MB and a minimum segment size of 60 MB.

> **Additional Information:**   See Temporary tablespace in Overview and Requirements.

Step 12 Turn off automatic archive logging and Replication

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle9i Database Administrator's Guide*
Users must log off?	Yes

If you have set up an automatic archive redo for log files or if you use Replication, perform the following tasks:

Turn off archive logging:

Run adstoplg.sql to turn off archive logging. This reduces the amount of disk space and shortens the time required by the upgrade. If you need to recover to an earlier point, it is faster to restore the database backup and rerun AutoUpgrade.

1. Copy adstoplg.sql from $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg (Windows) to the admin subdirectory you created in Step 5.

2. Set the environment to point to the ORACLE_HOME on the database server.

3. Go to the admin subdirectory and run the script:

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ sqlplus /nolog
   SQL> connect / as sysdba
   SQL> @adstoplg.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\apps\admin> sqlplus /nolog
   SQL> connect / as sysdba
   SQL> @adstoplg.sql
   ```

Disable Replication:

Before you run AutoUpgrade, turn off Replication. Refer to Disabling the Replication Feature in *Oracle9i Advanced Replication* for more information.

Step 13 Disable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle9i Database Administrator's Guide, Oracle Applications Concepts*
Users must log off?	Yes

Disable custom triggers or constraints on Oracle Applications tables. Re-enable these triggers in Step 6 of the Database Upgrade Tasks in Category 4. If you have custom indexes on Applications tables, determine whether they can affect performance during the upgrade, and drop them if necessary. If you aren't sure, it is best to drop the indexes and add them after the upgrade, if the new release has not created a similar index.

Step 14 Install XML Parser for PL/SQL

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle9i XML Application Developer's Kit Guide – XDK*
Users must log off?	Yes

Install XML Parser for PL/SQL (plxmlparser_v1_0_2.zip) and XML SQL Utility in the database.

> **Note:** Be sure the Unzip program is in the PATH. A copy for most
> operating systems is in COMMON_TOP/util/unzip.

1. Create an ORACLE_HOME/appsutil/admin directory and an ORACLE_
    HOME/appsutil/admin/xmlparser directory on the node where you have
    installed the database, if they do not already exist.

2. Copy plxmlparser_v1_0_2.zip from COMMON_TOP/util to ORACLE_
    HOME/appsutil/admin/xmlparser and unzip it. This file creates several
    subdirectories in the current location.

3. Copy XSU12_ver1_2_1.zip from COMMON_TOP/util to ORACLE_
    HOME/appsutil/admin and unzip it. This file creates a single subdirectory
    (OracleXSU12) and places everything under that directory.

4. Follow the installation instructions in the readme file for each product
    (xmlparser/lib/README for the XML Parser for PL/SQL, and
    OracleXSU12/lib/README for the XML SQL Utility.

5. Update XML Parser for Java version to ensure consistency between the application
    tier and the database.

    If the database server and the Applications servers are on the same node, change
    to the location of the JAVA_TOP and run the loadjava command. If they are not on
    the same node, copy xmlparserv2.zip from $JAVA_TOP on any Applications
    server node to a temporary location on the node where the database server is
    installed. Load it into the APPS schema using the following syntax:

    ```
    @ loadjava -user <APPS username>/<APPS password> -r -v xmlparserv2.zip
    ```

Install all packages in the APPS schema.

Step 15 Back up the database

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle9i Backup and Recovery Concepts*
Users must log off?	Yes

Make a cold backup of the Oracle Applications database. If you encounter problems
during the upgrade process, you can use this backup to restore your system to the
same state as before you began the upgrade.

> **Caution:** Shut down the database with the NORMAL option. You
> may not be able to restore the database from the backup if you use
> the IMMEDIATE or ABORT option.

Run AutoUpgrade

You have now completed all the tasks necessary to prepare your Oracle Applications
products for an upgrade. The next step is to run AutoUpgrade.

1. Set the environment as described in Chapter 1 of *Oracle Applications Maintenance
    Utilities*. Details about running AutoUpgrade are in Chapter 2 of the same book.

2. Start AutoUpgrade from the command line.

   To continue to use the OFA-compliant (old) tablespace model:

   ```
   $ adaimgr consolidated_tablespace=N
   ```

   To use the (new) OATM tablespace model:

   ```
   $ adaimgr
   ```

4

Category 4 — Before Using Oracle Applications

This chapter describes Category 4 steps — they affect the entire Oracle Applications system. The steps assume that you have already run AutoUpgrade as the last step in Category 3. *All users must be logged off the system and should not attempt to use any Oracle Applications product until these steps are complete.*

Updates

These Category 4 tasks direct you to apply certain updates and patches, including database drivers, product-related updates. All these tasks require AutoPatch. Some may also require other utilities.

> **Additional Information:** See Patching Your System in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

Update and Patching Tasks

Perform the following tasks to bring your system to the full 11*i* release level.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Download and apply latest AD minipack (US version)	Required	Database Administrator
2.	Update database to current Applications release level	Required	Database Administrator
3.	Disable maintenance mode	Required	Database Administrator
4.	Install translated software	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
5.	Update installed and licensed products	Required	Database Administrator
6.	Install online help	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
7.	Comment out Events settings	Required	Database Administrator

Step 1 Download and apply latest AD minipack (US version)

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

You must apply the latest AD minipack (US version) to update your database. Download it from Oracle*MetaLink* and follow the instructions in the readme.

> **Note:**   If your system uses translated software, do not apply the translated version of the AD minipack at this time. You will be instructed to apply the appropriate NLS patch in a subsequent step.

Step 2 Update database to current Applications release level

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*

To bring the database to the full Oracle Applications Release 11*i* maintenance level, apply the unified patch driver u3140000.drv (US version) on the node where the administration server is located. The patch driver is located in $AU_TOP/patch/115/driver (UNIX) or %AU_TOP%\patch\115\driver (Windows). Apply the patch by running AutoPatch with the following commands:

```
$ adpatch options=nocopyportion,nogenerateportion
```

Applying this patch is potentially a long-running process. The *unified* driver patch speeds up the application of a patch by running all portions of the patch automatically. Adding options=nocopyportion,nogenerateportion to the start command tells AutoPatch to run only the database portion of the unified driver.

Step 3 Disable maintenance mode

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*

During the application of the maintenance pack driver, the new Maintenance Mode feature was enabled to allow for better performance when applying a patch. Before you can log on to your system, you must disable maintenance mode using AD Administration.

> **Additional Information:**   See Changing Maintenance Mode in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

Maintenance mode must be enabled before you apply other patches to your system. See the information in *About Oracle Applications DBA Minipack 11i.AD.I* (Oracle*MetaLink* Note ID: 233044.1) and in the section on Preparing your System for Patching in Chapter 5 of *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities* for more information on this new feature.

> **Caution:** It is important that you read and understand the information about using maintenance mode before you continue with the upgrade.

Step 4 Install translated software

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to upgrades from **Release 10.7 or 11.0 with one or more non-American English active languages**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes*
TUMS Step Key:	AD_INSTALL_NLS

If American English is the only active language in your system, omit this step.

For each non-American English language that is active in your system, you must do the following:

- Obtain and apply the NLS version of the AD minipack you applied in Step 1.

- Install the NLS software to bring your translations up to the full maintenance pack level for this release. The *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes* contain complete instructions for installing translations.

> **Caution:** You must complete the tasks in the NLS Release Notes before using your Applications products in a language other than American English.

Step 5 Update installed and licensed products

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

Determine the latest product-specific patches. Then, download the patches for all active languages (American English and, if applicable, NLS translated languages) present in your system. Using AD Merge Patch merge the American English patches. Then, merge the NLS translated patches (if any). Apply the American English patch first, then apply the NLS patch.

> **Additional Information:** See AD Merge Patch in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*. See also Applying Multiple Patches to an NLS Installation in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

Step 6 Install online help

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

The Finishing your Upgrade chapter of this book contains instructions for installing online help. If you want to install online help now so that you can reference it for the

remaining upgrade steps, see Step 7 of the System Maintenance Tasks in Chapter 7. Before you make the decision about when to install help, note that this process may take a considerable amount of time.

> **Note:** Enabling maintenance mode before you install online help is optional. However, it may take noticeable longer to install help files than in previous releases.

Step 7 Comment out Events settings

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

Follow the instructions in *Database Initialization Parameters for Oracle Applications* on Oracle*MetaLink* (Doc ID: 216205.1) and reset init.ora parameters as needed.

Environment

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the Database Upgrade, the Applications Technology, or the product-specific tasks.

Environment Preparation Tasks

Complete the following tasks to complete the environment upgrade.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Run Rapid Install to configure and start server processes	Required	Database Administrator / System Administrator
2. Configure Applications client software for forms applet	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator / System Administrator
3. Reapply customizations	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator / System Administrator

Step 1 Run Rapid Install to configure and start server processes

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Installing Oracle Applications*

As a pre-upgrade step, you ran Rapid Install to set up the technology stack and create the file system. Now, run Rapid Install to configure and restart the server processes. Go to Chapter 4 in *Installing Oracle Applications* and follow the instructions beginning with the Configuring and Starting Server Processes section. When instructed to do so, complete the remaining Category 4 steps as outlined here.

Step 2 Configure Applications client software for forms applet

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

You must configure the client software to use the Oracle forms applet before you continue. See Configure Client Software to Use the Forms Applet in *Installing Oracle Applications* for instructions.

> **Additional Information:** See *Complete Guide to JInitiator for Oracle's E-Business Suite: Overview, Setup & Troubleshooting* (Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID: 162488.1). See also *Upgrading the JInitiator Version used with Oracle Applications 11i* (Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID: 232200.1).

Step 3 Reapply customizations

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

If you customized Applications environment files (APPLSYS.env or devenv), re-integrate them in devenv.env, or in the adovars.env file ($APPL_TOP/admin for UNIX or %APPL_TOP%\admin for Windows). Restart the application server processes so that the changes take affect.

> **Additional Information:** See Managing Server Processes in Chapter 1 of *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

If your system includes customized forms, reports, programs, libraries, or other Applications files, reapply the changes that apply to the new release.

Database

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the Applications Technology steps or the product-specific steps.

Database Upgrade Tasks

Complete the following steps to complete your database upgrade.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Reset ORACLE schema passwords	Recommended	Database Administrator / System Administrator
2.	Gather database statistics for CBO	Required	Database Administrator / System Administrator
3.	Set rollback segments for normal use	Required	Database Administrator
4.	Validate and compile APPS schema	Required	Database Administrator / System Administrator
5.	Integrate custom objects and schemas	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator / System Administrator
6.	Re-enable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator / System Administrator
7.	Back up Oracle Applications	Recommended	Database Administrator / System Administrator

Step 1 Reset ORACLE schema passwords

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*

During the upgrade, Rapid Install preserves the passwords that you set previously for existing products. However, as it creates a schema for each *new* product installed, it sets up a default password derived from the product abbreviation (short name). To maintain product security, reset these default passwords now. Use the Oracle Users window from the System Administrator responsibility.

> **Additional Information:** See Oracle Applications Schema Password Change Utility in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*.

Step 2 Gather database statistics for CBO

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Concurrent Manager?	Yes

Use the Gather Schema Statistics concurrent program (System Administration > Submit Request) to gather database statistics. If the schema name is ALL, then all Applications-specific schema statistics (having an entry in the FND_PRODUCT_ INSTALLATIONS table) are gathered. In addition to gathering index and table-level statistics, the program gathers column-level histogram statistics for all columns listed in the FND_HISTOGRAM_COLS table. *This program is potentially long-running.*

Because it is important to have an up-to-date set, gather database statistics periodically to make sure the database queries are optimized.

> **Additional Information:** See Cost-based Optimization in Oracle Applications in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Configuration*. See also Cost-based Optimization in *Oracle Applications Concepts* and Introduction to Optimization in *Oracle9i Concepts*.

Step 3 Set rollback segments for normal use

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle9i Database Administrator's Guide*

Set the rollback segments for normal operation, typically, 1 for each 25 users, plus 1 for each concurrent manager. Make the extent size 1 MB, and the minimum segment size 60 MB.

You also have the option of using the new Undo Management feature instead of rollback segments. For more information on setting Undo Management, see "Enabling System Managed Undo (SMU)" in the Oracle9*i* documentation set.

Step 4 Validate and compile APPS schema

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*

Before you continue with the upgrade, fix invalid objects in the database.

1. Create list of invalid objects.

   From the AD Administration main menu, select the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu. Run the "Validate APPS schema" task. Review the output and take corrective action as indicated in the report.

2. Compile objects in APPS schema.

   From the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu, run the "Compile APPS schema" option to compile all the invalid objects in the APPS schema.

3. Re-generate list of invalid objects. Re-compile the invalid objects until the list contains only those that are considered acceptable. See the latest version of the *Oracle Applications Release Notes* for a list of acceptable invalid objects for this release.

   > **Additional Information:** See AD Administration in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

Step 5 Integrate custom objects and schemas

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

If you previously created custom objects or have custom schemas that must be tightly integrated with Oracle Applications, follow the steps in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* to re-integrate these customizations with the APPS schema.

Release 11*i* uses Invoker Rights for most PL/SQL packages. Executing these packages from custom schemas may require additional grants from, and synonyms to, APPS schema objects. We recommend you explicitly declare Invoker Rights or Definer Rights for custom PL/SQL packages. See the *PL/SQL User's Guide and Reference* for more information.

Custom database objects must follow the naming standards for custom object names to avoid conflict with Oracle Applications.

> **Caution:** When naming database objects, use XX as a part of the short name. For example, you might define the custom application to use the short name XXGL, and database objects to begin with an XXGL_ prefix.

> **Additional Information:** See Defining your Custom Applications in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Step 6 Re-enable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Developer's Guide; Oracle9i Database Administrator's Guide*

During the upgrade, custom triggers or constraints may have been modified. If you disabled these triggers and constraints in Step 13 of the Database Upgrade Tasks in Chapter 3, identify any data updates that must be made before you re-enable them.

If you dropped any custom indexes in the same step, review the new data model to determine if the index is necessary before you redefine it.

Step 7 Back up Oracle Applications

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Concepts; Oracle8i Backup and Recovery Guide*

Have the system administrator back up the Oracle Applications product files. On a server or stand-alone machine, have the database administrator back up the Oracle Applications database.

Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC) Tasks

Multiple Reporting Currencies has been incorporated into the APPS schema so the APPS_MRC schema is no longer required. This change, which is transparent to end-users, improves processing efficiency and reduces maintenance. Patches need be applied only once (in the APPS schema), making it unnecessary to synchronize objects between schemas.

The APPS schema is used for standard reports, inquiries, and programs for MRC currency data in MRC-enabled products. MRC data that retrieves custom code may need to be converted to use the database objects in the APPS schema.

> **Note:**   You can drop the APPS_MRC schema. See Drop MRC schema in Chapter 7. For more information on MRC, see *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications*.

Applications Technology

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks before you perform the product-specific steps.

System Administration Tasks

Complete the following System Administration tasks.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Configure Java-based Workflow Notification Mailer	Required	System Administrator
2.	Fix flexfields cross-validation rules	Required	Technical Specialist
3.	Set profile options	Required	System Administrator
4.	Convert flexfield Date and DateTime value sets	Recommended	Technical Specialist
5.	Upgrade flexfield date and number data	Required	Technical Specialist

Task List		Status	Responsibility
6.	Set up electronic mail for concurrent managers	Required	System Administrator
7.	Reconnect spawned concurrent programs	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
8.	Update/verify custom responsibilities	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
9.	Copy and re-customize previously modified scripts or reports	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
10.	Migrate the CUSTOM library	Recommended	System Administrator
11.	Copy existing custom start scripts	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
12.	Restrict access to concurrent processing servers	Required	System Administrator
13.	Load attachment files into database	Conditionally Required	System Administrator

Step 1 Configure Java-based Workflow Notification Mailer

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide*

If you use the Oracle Workflow Notification Mailer to send and receive e-mail notification messages, and you have not already upgraded to the new Java-based Workflow Notification Mailer, you must do so now. The previous C-based Notification Mailer concurrent program and Generic Service Management Notification Mailer are obsolete.

You configure the Java-based Workflow Notification Mailer through the notification mailer configuration wizard in Oracle Applications Manager. You run it using the Generic Service Management (GSM) feature of Oracle Applications concurrent processing. For more information, refer to *Implementing Notification Mailers, Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide*, and to the Oracle Applications Manager online help.

Step 2 Fix flexfields cross-validation rules

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

To list flexfield cross-validation rules that have no lines and fix any invalid data, run the following script. It prompts as follows:

- List all bad rule lines? (yes or no)

  Type Yes to list the invalid lines *without* fixing the data.

- Delete all bad rule lines? (yes or no)

  Type Yes to fix the invalid data.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @affixcvr.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @affixcvr.sql
```

Step 3 Set profile options

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Product-specific implementation manuals; *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

To see instructions for setting profile options and a list of required options, refer to the product-specific implementation documentation and Oracle*MetaLink*.

> **Additional Information:**   See Profile Options in Oracle Application Object Library in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*.

Step 4 Convert flexfield Date and DateTime value sets

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

Convert flexfield segments or report parameters that use the format type Date or DateTime to use the format type Standard Date or Standard DateTime. Use the Flexfields List Date or DateTime Set Usages concurrent program to view a list of the value set usages.

Review value set usages:

Log in as the system administrator and choose Requests > Run. Run the Flexfields List Date or DateTime Set Usages concurrent program, and review the log file. Old-type value set usages that are seeded value sets can be replaced by seeded standard date value sets. If you have used custom value sets or pre-seeded standard value sets, use the clone feature.

Clone value sets:

If you have custom value sets, run the following concurrent program:

1. As the system administrator, choose Requests > Run. Run the Flexfields Clone a Date, or DateTime Value Set as Standard Date, or Standard DateTime Value Set program.

2. Enter old value set name as a parameter. The new value set name defaults to <old>_STANDARD.

3. Continue until all custom value sets are cloned.

> **Note:**   Attributes of the value sets, such as independent and dependent values or hierarchy information, are not copied to the new value set.

Replace old-type value set usages:

If you find old-type value sets, locate the flexfield segments and report parameters that use them, and update them to use the new ones. As the system administrator, you can update the following value sets:

- For key flexfield segments, choose Application > Flexfield > Key > Segments.

- For descriptive flexfield segments, choose Application > Flexfield > Descriptive > Segments.

- For report parameters, choose Concurrent > Program > Define.

> **Additional Information:** See *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*.

Step 5 Upgrade flexfield date and number data

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*

To support multiple formats, all flexfield date and number data is stored in a canonical form. To upgrade the transaction data in the date and number value sets to reflect this canonical form, you can use the following concurrent programs:

- Flexfields Upgrade All Standard Date and Standard DateTime Value Sets

- Flexfields Upgrade One Standard Date and Standard DateTime Value Set

- Flexfields Upgrade All Number Value Sets

- Flexfields Upgrade One Number Value Set

Run the All Standard and All Number value sets programs now:

1. As the system administrator, choose Requests > Run.

2. Run both the Flexfields Upgrade All Standard Date and Standard DateTime Value Sets and the Flexfields Upgrade All Number Value Sets concurrent programs.

At any time in the future, you can upgrade a single value set. Choose the Flexfields Upgrade One Standard Date and Standard DateTime Value Set or the Flexfields Upgrade One Number Value Set. Supply the name of the value set when prompted.

Step 6 Set up electronic mail for concurrent managers

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Configuration*

The concurrent managers send mail to the applmgr user if the Internal concurrent manager stops running. Set up the electronic mail for the applmgr user. The log file for the Internal concurrent manager shows an error if mail is not set up correctly.

Step 7 Reconnect spawned concurrent programs

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual*

If you have developed shell script concurrent programs (that use the Host execution method), reconnect the programs to the concurrent manager interface. Copy the concurrent programs from the old PROD_TOP to the new one. Change the working directory to the directory that contains the concurrent program executable. Then, reconnect the concurrent program as follows:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $<PROD>_TOP/bin
$ ln -s $FND_TOP/bin/fndcpesr <program>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %<PROD>_TOP%\bin
C:\> copy %FND_TOP%\bin\fndcpesr.exe <program>.exe
```

Parameter descriptions are as follows:

- <PROD> is the custom application product short name.

- <program> is the name you used to define the concurrent program executable in Oracle Applications (without any filename extension).

> **Additional Information:**   See Implementing Concurrent Processing and Concurrent Processing and Product Customizations Standards in *Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual*.

Step 8 Update/verify custom responsibilities

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7SC or 10.7NCA** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*

Verify that all custom responsibilities use the correct menu. From the System Administrator responsibility, navigate to Security > Responsibilities. Query each custom responsibility and update as necessary.

Step 9 Copy and re-customize previously modified scripts or reports

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Copy custom shell scripts or reports that are part of Oracle Applications to the custom application directories and re-customize the copy as necessary.

> **Additional Information:**   See Product Customization Standards in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Step 10 Migrate the CUSTOM library

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Before you copy custom code in the CUSTOM library to the new directory structure, refer to the backup you created in Step 2 of the System Administration Tasks in Category 1 and verify that the customizations are valid for the new version of Oracle Applications.

For valid customizations, place a copy of the new CUSTOM library (CUSTOM.pll) in a safe place. It is located under the new APPL_TOP in $AU_TOP/resource (UNIX), or %AU_TOP%\resource (Windows). Then, make a copy of the old Oracle Forms 4.5-based CUSTOM library and place it in the new directory. Upgrade to Oracle Forms Developer6*i* by regenerating the library. Or, you can cut and paste the existing custom code into the new library, and then regenerate it.

> **Additional Information:**   See Using the CUSTOM Library in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Step 11 Copy existing custom start scripts

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Configuration*

If you have customized the concurrent manager startup script (startmgr), copy the script from the old environment to the new environment. Then, verify that the customizations are valid for the new environment.

> **Note:**   The default location in UNIX for the startmgr script is $FND_TOP/bin. For more information, see *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Configuration*.

Step 12 Restrict access to concurrent processing servers

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Configuration*

You view log and output files on the desktop client using the Report Review Agent and the Web Report Review tools. So, it is not necessary to have direct access to the concurrent processing servers to view these files.

To ensure the security of Oracle Applications log and output files, limit user access to the concurrent processing servers. If users must have direct access to the concurrent processing servers for other reasons, follow the steps in this section to restrict access to the log and output directories.

1.   Create a UNIX Edition group for directory users.

Create a UNIX Edition group consisting of applmgr and the users who need access to the directory. For example, you might create the group *glusers* for all users of Oracle General Ledger. Groups are defined in the group file of the /etc directory.

2. Change directory file protection.

From the applmgr account, change the file protection of a directory so that it has no global privileges:

```
$ chmod 770 <directory>
```

In the following example, the *r* and *x* shown in the system response indicate that there are global read and execute privileges for the directory:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwxr-x  2 applmgr  misappl   29423  Jan 12 10:27 out/
           ^ ^
```

After the directory privilege is changed, the system response lists three dashes for global privileges, indicating that all global privileges have been revoked:

```
$ chmod 770 out
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwx---  2 applmgr  misappl   29423  Jan 12 10:27 out/
           ^ ^
```

3. Change directory group.

Change a directory's group to the new UNIX Edition group:

```
$ chgrp <group> <directory>
```

Here is an example:

```
$ chgrp glusers out
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwx--- 2 applmgr  glusers   29423  Jan 12 10:27 out/
```

The system response indicates that the group has been changed from *misappl* to *glusers*.

4. Alter file privilege for concurrent manager files (optional).

The operating system user that starts the concurrent managers (applmgr) owns all log and output files created by the managers. Oracle Applications uses the UNIX command *umask* to remove write privilege to these files from all users except the owner. You can change privileges by changing the value of *umask*.

The startmgr script uses the *umask* value set by the environment variable $APPLMSK in fndenv. To change this value, modify $APPLMSK. For higher security, override the value of $APPLMSK in startmgr. If you are setting up parallel concurrent processing, do the same for dcpbatch.

To modify the *umask* value in startmgr or dcpbatch, change to $FND_TOP/bin and display the script with the file editor of your choice. Find the following line:

```
umask ${APPLMSK-"022"}
```

This line indicates that if $APPLMSK is not set, the *umask* command uses the value 022. Modify the alternate value by substituting a new one. For example:

```
umask ${APPLMSK-"026"}
```

Use a 3-digit value as an argument to override $APPLMSK. For example:

```
umask 022
```

> **Note:**   The UNIX man page for *umask* contains more information
> on the command and settings.

If you change *umask* values, remember to give the owner of a file read and write privilege.

5. Restrict access to scripts (optional).

To enhance security, give only the applmgr login write permission for startmgr and batchmgr. If you are using parallel concurrent processing, do the same for dcpstart and dcpbatch. Also change the restrictions on any custom scripts that call these files. The following commands prevent all users (except applmgr) from altering the scripts:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/bin
$ chmod 700 startmgr batchmgr dcpstart dcpbatch
```

Step 13 Load attachment files into database

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7NCA or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Concurrent Manager?	Yes

In Step 1 of the System Administration Tasks in Category 1, you determined the location of any existing attachment files. In this step, you load them into the database.

1. In the operating system on the application server, change to the directory you created in Category 1, Step 1.

2. Type the following command on one line with a space between FND_ATTACH and PLS_CALLBACK, where <DB Connect String> is the username/password@Oracle SID of the APPS account (for example apps/apps@TEST) and * is a wildcard indicating that all files in the directory should be uploaded to the attachments tables in the database:

```
FNDGFU <DB Connect String> 0 Y UPLOAD PROGRAM_NAME=FND_ATTACH \
PLS_CALLBACK=FND_ATTACHMENT_UTIL_PKG.UPDATE_FILE_METADATA *
```

3. Check the log file produced by FNDGFU (located in the same directory with the file name L<concurrent request ID>.log). Correct errors listed in the file.

Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks

Complete the following FlexBuilder/Account Generator tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow	Required	System Administrator
2. Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow Builder	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
3. Update Account Generator process	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist / System Administrator

Task List	Status	Responsibility
4. Associate FlexBuilder rules for Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist / System Administrator

Step 1 Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide*

Oracle Workflow is installed by AutoUpgrade. See the *Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide* for manual setup steps required to complete the installation.

Step 2 Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow Builder

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Workflow Client Installation Notes*

Oracle Workflow Builder (client-side) is installed using Oracle Installer. If you are customizing the default Account Generator process, see the *Client Installation Notes* on the *Oracle Workflow Client* CD.

Step 3 Update Account Generator process

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Flexfields Guide*

If you customized the default Account Generator process, but did not change its name, omit this step.

If you customized the Account Generator process for a particular Workflow Account Generator item type and assigned it a new name, upgrade the Account Generator. The following table shows the Account Generator item types and default processes that you can view and modify using Oracle Workflow.

Product	Item Type	Default Process Name
Oracle Assets	FA Account Generator	Generate Default Account
Oracle Order Entry	Generate Cost of Goods Sold Account	Generate Default Account
Oracle Projects	Project Expense Report Account Generator	Default Account Generator for Expense Reports
Oracle Projects	Project Supplier Invoice Account Generator	Generate Default Account
Oracle Purchasing	PO Account Generator	Generate Default Accounts
Oracle Purchasing	PO Requisition Account Generator	Generate Default Accounts
Oracle Receivables	AR Substitute Balancing Segment	Replace Balancing Segment

The <product name> Account Generator sections in individual product user's guides contain details.

> **Additional Information:** See Account Generator in \<product name>) in *Oracle Assets User's Guide*, *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*, and *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*.

There are three ways to upgrade the Account Generator.

1. Do nothing. If they meet your accounting requirements, you can use the Account Generator default processes provided by each product that previously used FlexBuilder.

2. Associate FlexBuilder process to use customized FlexBuilder rules. If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10.7, and want to continue using the existing FlexBuilder customizations, migrate those business rules into the Account Generator.

3. Develop a new default Account Generator process by creating a new process or copying the existing default and changing the name. Use the renamed process as a base for the changes.

> **Additional Information::** See Customizing the Account Generator in *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*.

Step 4 Associate FlexBuilder rules for Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Flexfields Guide*

If your system uses customized flexfields, use the Account Generator Processes window to associate the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process with the appropriate Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type.

> **Additional Information:** See Choosing the Process for a Flexfield Structure in *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*.

Financials

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financials products you have installed.

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Complete the following Financials for Asia/Pacific tasks.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Modify truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules	Conditionally Required	All/System Administrator
2. Move customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers	Recommended	Taiwan/System Administrator

Step 1 Modify truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10SC Production 16.1 (or higher) or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*
TUMS Step Key?	JA_MODIFY_LOOKUPS

After reviewing the results of the migration and the report you created in Step 1 of the Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks in Category 2, you may need to modify migrated lookups and custom modules if they reference truncated lookup codes or renamed lookup meanings.

During the upgrade, the original JA lookup tables (JA_LOOKUP_TYPES and JA_ LOOKUPS) are renamed to JA_LOOKUP_TYPES_OLD and JA_LOOKUPS_OLD, respectively. Views with the original table names are created instead. These views are based on FND lookup tables to which JA lookups are migrated. The upgrade does not remove these _OLD tables. You can use them as a reference if you need to manually change the migrated lookups or customized modules.

If your customized modules reference obsolete lookups, you may need to manually migrate the obsolete lookups from the _OLD tables. (Release 11*i* Oracle Applications generic modules do not reference obsolete lookups.)

> **Additional Information:** See Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific in *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

Step 2 Move customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades (**Taiwan**).

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JA_MOVE_CUSTOMER_UNIFORM_NUM

In Release 10.7 and 11.0, customer uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) were stored in the Tax Registration Number field in the Customers window. In 11*i*, the Customers window has both a Taxpayer ID and a Tax Registration Number field. Use jatwupg4.sql to move the customer uniform number to the Taxpayer ID field, and jatwupg3.sql to record existing customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers so you can redefine the numbers after the upgrade.

Record customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers:

Run jatwupg3.sql by typing:

UNIX:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg3.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg3.sql
```

Review the output in jatwupg3.lst and keep the file for your records.

Move customer uniform numbers:

Run this script to move customer uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) in the Tax Registration Number field to the Taxpayer ID field:

UNIX:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg4.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg4.sql
```

Review the jatwupg4.log file after the script finishes.

The jatwupg4.sql script overwrites the Taxpayer ID field in the Release 11*i* Customers window with data from the Release 10.7 or 11 Tax Registration Number field and makes the Tax Registration Number field blank.

> **Caution:** Do not run this script if you want to keep the existing data in the Taxpayer ID and Tax Registration Number fields. Do not run this script if multiple countries share the database, as it updates all customer taxpayer ID information regardless of whether the information is entered in a Taiwanese responsibility.

Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks

Complete the following Financials Common Country tasks.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Upgrade descriptive flexfield dates to use the new AOL date validation	Conditionally Required	All/Database Administrator, IS Manager

Step 1 Upgrade descriptive flexfield dates to use the new AOL date validation

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
TUMS Step Key?	JG_UPDATE_DFF_AOL_DATE_VALIDATION

The validation for date fields within globalization flexfields was changed so that you can correctly store and retrieve date information in globalization flexfield attribute columns, regardless of the language that was used when dates were entered. To upgrade date values in the flexfield columns:

UNIX:
```
$ cd $JG_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzupgd.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %JG_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzupgd.sql
```

Because the language that you use determines the way dates are entered, run this script once for each language that is installed.

Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Grants Accounting tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Run migration driver	Required	Database Administrator/Applications Specialist (Grants)

Step 1 Run migration driver

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Concurrent Manager	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	GMS_RUN_MIGRATE_DRIVER

Before you run the migration driver, verify and set values for the following profile options:

```
number of parallel threads (default = 10)
number of awards processed per commit (default = 500)
update open/close awards (default = All)
```

Apply the data migration driver (gmsup115.drv) using AutoPatch. It is located in $GMS_TOP/patch/115/driver (UNIX) or %GMS_TOP%\patch\115\driver (Windows). Refer to gmsup115.txt in the readme directory for more information. Review gms_upgrade_billing_verification.out and gms_upgrade_balances_ verification.out in the out directory.

Service

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Service products you have installed.

Oracle Service Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Service.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Migrate calendar dates	Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Migrate calendar dates

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

To use calendar views effectively, migrate calendar dates by performing the following steps:

1. Set the Task Manager:JTF Tasks Default Date Selected profile option to Planned, Scheduled or Actual.

2. Run the jtftkmts.sql script to populate the CALENDAR_START_DATE, CALENDAR_END_DATE, and DATE_SELECTED fields.

    ```
    $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
    $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
    @JTF_TOP/patch/115/sql/jtftkmts.sql
    ```

5

Category 5 — Before Using Your Products

This chapter describes Category 5 steps — they affect only specific products, making them unavailable until the steps are complete.

All Products

Product-specific implementation or setup steps are an integral part of the upgrade. These steps may be needed to "turn on" new functionality added during the upgrade process or set up new product features.

Implementation and Setup Tasks

Complete all implementation and setup steps to ensure the success of your system upgrade.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1.　Review product-specific documentation	Required	Application Specialists

Step 1 Review product-specific documentation

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Product-specific user's guides
Do before using?	All Oracle products

Before you begin the Category 5 steps, review the product-specific documentation and associated Oracle*MetaLink* notes for the products you have installed to see if there are any implementation or setup steps that must be performed to "turn on" or implement new features of products that were added during the upgrade process.

1. Determine which products you have installed.

2. Make sure you have the product documentation for each product.

3. Review the implementation and/or setup information in the product guides.

4. Perform these steps as appropriate for your system.

Financials

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financials products you have installed.

Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Perform the following Oracle General Ledger tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1.　Migrate conflicting daily rates	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator/Application Specialist (GL)

Step 1 Migrate conflicting daily rates

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle General Ledger
TUMS Step Key?	GL_MIGRATE_CONFLICTING_DAILY_RATES

Perform this step if you:

■ maintain daily rates for more than one set of books in the same Release 10.7 Applications installation.

■ want to retain descriptive flexfield information associated with daily rates.

> **Note:** Even though users should not log on before you complete this step, the person performing the upgrade can log on to check the upgrade success or failure, examine upgraded daily rates, or define new conversion types.

To migrate conflicting daily rates:

1. Run the Daily Rates Conflict report:

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpt.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpt.sql
   ```

2. Review the report. If no daily rates conflicts exist, and you do not want to retain any descriptive flexfields associated with the daily rates, no further action is required.

3. If conflicting rates exist, or if you want to retain descriptive flexfields, run the following script to migrate the rates:

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtmrt.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtmrt.sql
   ```

The script requires the following parameters:

For this parameter...	Enter the following...
Set of Books Name	the name of the set of books from which you want to transfer rates.
From Conversion Type	the conversion type of the rates to be transferred.
From Currency	the From currency of the rates to be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer rates for all From currencies.
From Date	the starting date (DD-MON-YYYY) in the range of dates for which daily rates should be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer rates starting with the earliest date for which daily rates are defined.
To Date	the ending date (DD-MON-YYYY) in the range of dates for which daily rates should be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer all rates starting with the From Date up to and including the most recent date for which daily rates are defined.
Destination Conversion Type	the conversion type to assign to the rate after it has been transferred. This conversion type must already exist in your system.
Override Flag	Y if you want to replace rates that already exist in the rate set; N if you only want to add new rates to the rate set.

> **Note:** Do not use leading or trailing spaces when entering these parameters. Also note that the parameters are case-sensitive.

4. To retain descriptive flexfield information for daily rates, use the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window to redefine the flexfields used in Release 10.7.

> **Note:** Define the descriptive flexfields in the new GL_DAILY_ RATES table. The Release 10.7 definitions are not transferred from the GL_DAILY_ CONVERSION_RATES table.

Global Accounting Engine Tasks

Perform the following Global Accounting Engine tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Perform Multiple Reporting Currencies tasks	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator/Application Specialist
2. Migrate existing date and non-integer data	Required	Database Administrator/Application Specialist
3. Populate tax information for accounting lines	Required	System Administrator

Step 1 Perform Multiple Reporting Currencies tasks

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference Manual?	No
Do before using?	Global Accounting Engine

If you are using Multiple Reporting Currencies in Payables or Receivables, you must complete the associated MRC steps for each of these products before you continue with the remaining Global Accounting tasks in this section. These actions are required to ensure data integrity.

The associated steps are in this chapter. For Payables, complete the instructions in Payables, Step 3 on page 5-7. For Receivables, complete the instructions in Receivables Step 5 on page 5-14.

Step 2 Migrate existing date and non-integer data

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Product Update Notes, Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide, Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual*
Do before using?	Global Accounting Engine, Oracle Receivables, Oracle Payables, or Oracle Inventory
TUMS Step Key?	AX_MIGRATE_NON_INTEGER_DATA

Use the scripts in this step to migrate date and non-integer data (that was previously stored in character columns) to the date and number columns. Before you run the scripts:

1. Set the NLS_DATE_FORMAT environment variable to DD-MON-RR.

2. Ensure that NLS_LANG is set to the same language used prior to upgrading.

3. Ensure that NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS is set to the same format used prior to upgrading.

These scripts were designed to migrate data originally created in one language, one numeric character format, and a date format of either DD-MON-RR or YYYY/MM/DD. An error message appears if more than one language or numeric character format was used, or if a date format other than DD-MON-RR or YYYY/MM/DD was used to store the date in the character column. If you get this error message, update the character column values to use the same format, and re-run the scripts. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

To migrate data for the AX_SLE_LINES table:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos01.sql <batchsize>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos01.sql <batchsize>
```

To migrate data for the AX_DOCUMENT_STATUSES table:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos02.sql <batchsize>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos02.sql <batchsize>
```

Step 3 Populate tax information for accounting lines

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Global Accounting Engine
TUMS Step Key?	AX_POPULATE_TAX_INFO

The upgrade adds new columns to the AX_SLE_LINES table to support tax reporting. Run axxpos06.sql to populate these columns with tax information for the upgraded accounting lines. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos06.sql <batchsize>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\patch\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos06.sql <batchsize>
```

Oracle Payables Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Payables tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Replace modified payment formats	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Set up prepayment payment terms	Recommended	Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator

Step 1 Replace modified payment formats

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Setting Up Custom Formats, Payment Formats, and Defining and Maintaining Payables Payment Documents *(Oracle Payables User's Guide)*
Do before using?	Oracle Payables
TUMS Step Key?	AP_REMODIFY_PAYMENT_FORMATS

Do not perform this step if both these conditions are true: 1) you are upgrading from an English-only installation, *and* 2) you have never renamed or modified the attributes of a Payables seeded payment format. If these conditions are *not true*, you MUST perform this step for all Latin American countries that have country-specific Payment Formats (Argentina, Brazil, Chile, and Colombia). This applies to Release 10.7 and Release 11.0.

In Release 11, we enhanced the architecture of each of the seeded payment formats. If you modified Release 10.7 payment formats, replace them with the Release 11/11*i* formats. A payment format may have been modified as follows:

- You renamed it in the Payment Formats window.

- You changed its attributes in the Payment Formats window.

- Oracle translated the name for a non-English version of Payables.

Perform this step to ensure all Release 11*i* payment formats use the same names and attributes as the payment formats you used before the upgrade. This provides continued support of the Payables seeded payment formats in future releases.

During the upgrade, the system identifies each Payables seeded payment format that requires this step and adds a @ symbol to the beginning of its name. Run the following script to create a list of all modified payment formats assigned to payment documents:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apucfrpt.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apucfrpt.sql
```

This script produces apucfrpt.lst, which lists the following values for each modified payment format that you have assigned to a payment document: Bank, Branch, Account, Payment Document, and Payment Format.

For each payment format on the report, perform the following steps.

1. In the Payment Formats window, query the name of the seeded (unmodified) payment format you used to create the modified payment format.

2. Duplicate the attributes and name of the modified payment format.

3. Save your work.

4. Open the Payment Documents window of the Banks form and query the payment document to which you had assigned the modified payment format.

5. In the Payment Format field, delete the @ from the payment format name so that it matches the new Release 11*i*-based payment format name.

6. Save your work.

Step 2 Set up prepayment payment terms

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Payment Terms (*Oracle Payables User's Guide*)
Do before using?	Oracle Payables
TUMS Step Key?	AP_SETUP_PREPAYMENT_TERMS

The prepayment functionality has changed. In order to get the same default behavior (payment terms of Immediate when entering a prepayment-type invoice), set up default payment terms for the Prepayment invoice types. For example, you may want to default Immediate payment terms to all prepayments.

1. For each operating unit, choose Setup > Invoice > Payment Terms.

2. In the Payment Terms window, define the payment terms that you want to use as the default for all prepayments. Save your work.

3. For each operating unit, navigate to the Payables Options window (Setup > Options > Payables).

4. Select the Invoice tabbed region. In the Prepayment Payment Terms field, enter the default payment terms. Save your work.

Step 3 Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Oracle Payables
TUMS Step Key?	AP_MRC_DATAMODEL_UPG

Perform this step if you have implemented Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC).

To maintain compatibility, data model changes made to Oracle Payables require changes to the AP/MRC data model. Apply the data model upgrade driver dapmc115.drv using AutoPatch. The driver is located in $AP_TOP/patch/115/driver (UNIX) or %AP_TOP%\patch\115\driver (Windows). Refer to apmc115r.txt in the readme directory for more information.

> **Note:** You must have successfully completed Step 1 of the Oracle Payables Tasks in Chapter 3, before you apply this driver. It uses the exchange rates to upgrade the MRC data.

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Receivables tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Create indexes on transaction flexfield columns	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
2. Recreate custom tax vendor extension views	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
3. Update tax vendor descriptive flexfield information	Required	System Administrator
4. Create contexts and segments for new flexfields	Required	System Administrator
5. Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator

Step 1 Create indexes on transaction flexfield columns

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Oracle Receivables
TUMS Step Key?	AR_CREATE_INDEXES_ON_TRANS_COL

Perform this step only if you use AutoInvoice.

Create indexes on the transaction flexfield columns so you can query transaction flexfield information in the invoice headers and lines and speed up validation.

Define *non-unique*, concatenated indexes on the following tables and columns that you use for the Line Transaction Flexfield and the Transaction Flexfield:

Table	Columns
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-15 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-15 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL	interface_header_attribute1-15 interface_header_context

To find columns used for the Line Transaction Flexfield, navigate to the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Descriptive > Segments) and query the Line Transaction Flexfield. Note each context and which segments are enabled using interface line attribute columns from the RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL table.

Then, create non-unique, concatenated indexes for the same interface line attribute columns in the RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL and RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL tables and for the same interface header attribute columns in the RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL tables.

If you are importing sales credit and accounting information, create indexes for the same interface line attribute columns in the RA_INTERFACE_SALESCREDITS_ALL and RA_INTERFACE_DISTRIBUTIONS_ALL tables. Create these indexes only if you are using these tables to import sales credit and accounting information.

> **Additional Information:** See Transaction Flexfields in *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*.

If you have only one context defined, create only one index for each table in the list. However, if you have multiple contexts defined, you may want to create multiple indexes per table, according to your needs. For example, suppose the Line Transaction Flexfield has three contexts set up as follows:

Flexfield Context	Attribute Columns assigned to Enabled Segments
Context1	Interface_line_attribute1
Context1	Interface_line_attribute2
Context2	Interface_line_attribute1
Context2	Interface_line_attribute2
Context2	Interface_line_attribute3
Context3	Interface_line_attribute3
Context3	Interface_line_attribute9

You could create three indexes per table, one for each context, like this:

Index	Table	Columns
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF1 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-2 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF2 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF3 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT1	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-2 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT2	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT3	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context

Or, you could create two indexes — one for context3 and another for context2. Context1 uses the index for context2 because context2 has the same first two attribute columns as context1, like this:

Index	Table	Columns
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF1 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF2 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT1	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT2	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context

Oracle Projects and Oracle Order Management use specific seeded contexts and enabled segments. Create a unique index for each combination of enabled segments. The number of segments differs based on the release level. These indexes assist in the lookups for those products.

If you have licensed Oracle Projects:

If users query transactions based on project numbers, create an index RA_ CUSTOMER_TRX_PA1 on the following two columns in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ ALL: interface_header_context and interface_header_attribute1.

If you have licensed Oracle Order Management:

Create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_OE1 on the following two columns in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL:

- interface_line_attribute 1

- interface_line_attribute2

Create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_OE2 on the interface_line_attribute6 column in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL.

> **Additional Information:** See Importing Transactions Using AutoInvoice in *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*.

Step 2 Recreate custom tax vendor extension views

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Receivables User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Receivables
TUMS Step Key?	AR_RECREATE_CUSTOM_TAX_VIEWS

Complete this step if you implemented the Tax Vendor Extension and customized any of the following Oracle Tax Vendor Extension views:

View	View
TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V	TAX_LINES_RECURR_INVOICE_V
TAX_LINES_CREATE_V	TAX_LINES_DELETE_V
TAX_ADJUSTMENTS_V	

> **Note:** If your tax vendor is Taxware® Sales/Use Tax System or Vertex® Quantum, and you have implemented descriptive flexfields, you must perform an additional step, as described in *Integrating Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum Release 11i* or *Integrating Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System.*

For example, you created a file called custom1.sql, which contains the script for customizing the view TAX_LINES_CREATE_V. Recreate the view by typing the following, where <directory> is the location of custom1 script and <file> is the name of the custom file.

```
sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<directory>/<file>
```

Add new columns to views:

In Step 2 of the Oracle Receivables Tasks in Category 1, you made copies of customized views or created a script to reinstall them. Before reinstalling these views, add the additional columns created in Release 11*i*. To see how the new views are written, execute the following command:

```
sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

To look at the new view, execute the following commands:

```
SQL> set long 1000000
SQL> spool view
SQL> select text from user_views where view_name='TAX_LINES_CREATE_V';
SQL> exit
```

This creates a file called view.lst that contains the definition of the predefined view. To view the definition, type the following, where <CUSTOM_VIEW> is the name of the customized view:

```
SQL> set long 1000000
SQL> spool customview
SQL> select text from user_views where view_name='<CUSTOM_VIEW>';
SQL> exit
```

This creates a file called customview.lst. Compare its contents with the contents of view.lst to see which columns and conditions to add. The structure of the customized view must be exactly the same as the view shipped with Oracle Receivables. For example, the number, order, and data type of each column must be the same as the TAX_LINES_CREATE_V view.

Rename customized views:

To reduce the number of steps in future upgrades and so that installations with multiple organizations can control which users call an installed third-party application for tax calculations, Oracle Receivables uses a naming structure to group views into sets.

> **Note:** Rename *all* customized views to meet the new naming standard.

To rename a customized view, execute the following commands:

UNIX:
```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> rename <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> to <NEW_VIEW_NAME>
```

Windows:
```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> rename <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> to <NEW_VIEW_NAME>
```

The value for <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> is the name of the customized view. The value for <NEW_VIEW_NAME> uses the new naming standard as follows:

View Name	Standard
For Oracle	(no additional naming structure)
For TaxWare(AVP)	_A added to the view name
For Vertex	_V added to the view name
For Custom 1	_1 added to the view name
For Custom 2	_2 added to the view name
For Custom 3	_3 added to the view name
For Custom 4	_4 added to the view name
For Custom 5	_5 added to the view name

For example, the TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V view has the following naming structure:

View Name	Standard
For Oracle	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V
For Taxware	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_A
For Vertex	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_V
For Custom 1	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_1

Step 3 Update tax vendor descriptive flexfield information

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System or Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum*
Do before using?	Oracle Receivables
TUMS Step Key?	AR_UPDATE_TAX_VENDOR_DES_FLEX

Complete this step if your tax vendor is either Taxware Sales/Use Tax System or Vertex Quantum. In this release, the point of order acceptance, point of order origin, ship-to, ship-from, and tax exemption information must be entered in the Receivables Salesforce, Organization, and System Options windows. Run ar115vdr.sql to copy existing information in the descriptive flexfields to the new Release 11*i* columns. The script header describes the necessary parameters:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vdr.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vdr.sql
```

> **Additional Information:**   See *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System*. See also *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum*.

Step 4 Create contexts and segments for new flexfields

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*
Do before using?	Customer enhancements
TUMS Step Key?	AR_CREATE_CONTEXTS_AND_SEGMENTS

The upgrade changes the names of some of the tables containing customer information and also installs new flexfields that refer to the new tables. (After you have completed the installation, the letters OLD are appended to the obsolete flexfields.) In this step, you copy the Context Field Values and the values in the Segments Summary from the old flexfields to the new ones.

The following table lists the new flexfields.

Obsolete Flexfield	New Flexfield
Customer Information OLD	Customer Information
Address Information OLD	Address Information
Site Use Information OLD	Site Use Information
Customer Credit Profile Information OLD	Customer Credit Profile Information
Customer Profile Amounts OLD	Customer Profile Amounts
Telephone Number Information OLD	Telephone Number Information
Contact Role Information OLD	Contact Role Information
Customer Relationship Information OLD	Customer Relationship Information
Remit Address OLD	Remit Address
Credit Profile Class Information OLD	Credit Profile Class Information
Customer Profile Class Amounts OLD	Customer Profile Class Amounts
Contact Information OLD	Contact Information

1. Navigate to the Descriptive Flexfields Segments window. From the system administrator responsibility, choose Application > Flexfield > Descriptive > Segments.

2. Query the first new flexfield; for example, Customer Information. After you run the query, the Customer Information flexfield appears, without context information.

3. Without closing the first Descriptive Flexfields Segment window, open a new instance of the same window.

4. Query the old flexfield; for example, Customer Information OLD.

5. Copy the values of the old Context Field Values region into the Context Field Values region of the new flexfield and save your work.

6. Choose the Segments button to open the Segments Summary window for the old flexfield.

7. Copy and paste the values in the old Segments Summary window into the new Segments Summary window.

8. Save your work.

9. Repeat this procedure for each of the remaining new flexfields.

Step 5 Create or modify data for data model changes for MRC

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Receivables User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Receivables
TUMS Step Key?	AR_MRC_DATAMODEL_UPG

Perform this step if you have implemented Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC).

To maintain compatibility, data model changes made to Oracle Receivables require changes to the AR/MRC data model. To upgrade the data model, complete the following steps.

Gain/Loss/Rounding (GLR) accounts can exist in one or more reporting sets of books without being defined in the primary set of books. For the data model upgrade driver to succeed, however, GLR accounts must first be defined for all sets of books.

1. Run the missing Gain/Loss/Rounding (GLR) accounts report:

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @armcchk1.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @armcchk1.sql
   ```

2. Review the report output in file armcchk1.lst. If the output shows missing GLR accounts for sets of books, have an Application Specialist define the missing GLR accounts before you proceed.

   > **Additional Information:**   See Setting Up > Defining Receivables System Options > Accounting System Options in *Oracle Receivables User Guide*.

3. Apply the data model upgrade driver darmc115.drv using AutoPatch.

   The driver is located in $AR_TOP/patch/115/driver (UNIX) or in %AR_TOP%\patch\115\driver (Windows). Refer to armc115r.txt in the readme directory for more information.

Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Financials Common Country tasks.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Update customized menus that use JG submenus	Conditionally Required	All /System Administrator

Step 1 Update customized menus that use JG submenus

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*
Do before using?	Oracle Financials Common Country Features
TUMS Step Key?	JG_UPDATE_CUST_MENUS

Oracle Financials Common Country Features now includes a separate, seeded menu for each application within each country, instead of a single, seeded menu for all countries. If you have custom menus that use old menus as submenus, update the custom menus to use the new JG menus instead.

For information on defining menus, refer to Menus Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*. For details about the JG menus that are seeded in Release 11*i*, refer to Oracle Financials Common Country Features, *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific tasks.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Correct existing data before reporting tax information	Required	Korea / Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)

Step 1 Correct existing data before reporting tax information

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Korea User Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific
TUMS Step Key?	JA_CORRECT_TAX_INFO

Before you enter any new transactions in Oracle Payables and Receivables, complete the setup as outlined in the Release 11*i Oracle Financials for Korea User Guide*. You may also want to perform this setup if you want to report on transactions, such as invoices, payments, receipts, withholding and VAT distributions, that existed *before* the upgrade.

Note that since the overall setup, logic, and calculation process that generated the current withholdings and VAT distribution lines may differ from the new functionality, extract and report data used by the Korean Withholding and VAT reports for transactions that were entered *prior* to the upgrade may show calculations that are not consistent with calculations on transactions that are entered *after* the upgrade.

Therefore, you may prefer to report withholdings and VAT only for transactions and respective account distributions that are entered *after* the upgrade date. You can accomplish this by using the GL Date range parameter in the reports.

You may also want to install the online help update 1338864.

Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Financials for Europe tasks.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Update customized menus that use JE submenus	Conditionally Required	All /System Administrator

Step 1 Update customized menus that use JE submenus

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*
Do before using?	Oracle Financials for Europe
TUMS Step Key?	JE_UPDATE_CUST_MENUS

Oracle Financials for Europe now includes a separate, seeded menu for each application within each country, instead of a single, seeded menu for all countries. If you have custom menus that use the old menus as submenus, update the custom menus to use the new JE menus instead.

For details about defining menus, see Menus Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*. For details about the JE menus that are seeded in Release 11*i*, see Oracle Financials for Europe, *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Financials for Latin America tasks.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Create new lookup codes	Conditionally Required	Argentina, Colombia/Application Specialist (Receivables)
2. Set tax system options	Conditionally Required	Argentina, Colombia/Application Specialist (Receivables)
3. Update sales orders and invoices	Conditionally Required	Argentina, Colombia/Application Specialist (Receivables)
4. Add warehouse name information	Conditionally Required	Argentina, Brazil, Colombia/System Administrator
5. Associate tax information for each inventory organization location	Conditionally Required	Brazil/Application Specialist (Receivables)
6. Associate tax groups and tax categories	Conditionally Required	Argentina, Brazil, Colombia /Application Specialist (Receivables)
7. Cancel and re-enter all unapproved and unposted invoices	Conditionally Required	Argentina, Colombia/Application Specialist (Payables)
8. Archive restored technical appraisals	Conditionally Required	Colombia/Application Specialist (Assets)

Step 1 Create new lookup codes

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Argentina and Colombia)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Financials for Latin America
TUMS Step Key?	JL_CREATE_NEW_LOOKUP_CODES

From the Application Developers responsibility, use the Application Object Library Lookups window (Application > Lookups > Application Object Library) to create the following lookup codes. Do not enter values in the Start Date Active and End Date Active fields. Check the Enabled check box.

Creating these lookup codes, you can view old transactions.

Lookup Code	Lookup Type	Notes
OBS-TC	JLZZ_AR_TX_CATEGRY	Create only if you are upgrading from Release 11.0 and have not applied update 839884.
		Assign existing tax codes to this obsolete tax category so that you can successfully query previous tax codes.
OBS-COND	TRANSACTION_ ATTRIBUTE	Create only if upgrading from Release 10.7.
		You can view pre-upgrade transactions that did not fail mandatory validations.
OBS-VALUE	JLZZ_AR_TX_ATTR_ VALUE	Create only if upgrading from Release 10.7.
		You can view pre-upgrade transactions that did not fail mandatory validations.

> **Additional Information:**   See Application Utilities Lookups and Application Object Library Lookups in *Oracle Applications User's Guide*.

Step 2 Set tax system options

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades **(Argentina and Colombia)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide; Oracle Receivables User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Financials for Latin America
TUMS Step Key?	JL_SET_TAX_SYSTEM_OPTIONS

Set tax system options as part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade. If you are using the multi-organization functionality, repeat this step for each organization.

1. Navigate to the System Options window (Argentine Receivables > Standard AR > Setup > System > System Options) or (Colombian Receivables > Oracle Receivables > Setup > System > System Options).

2. In the Tax alternate name region, check the Inclusive Tax Used check box and make sure that the Compound Taxes check box is unchecked.

3. In the Miscellaneous alternate name region, open the globalization flexfield.

4. Enter values in the Country Code, Use Legal Messages, and Tax Rule Set fields.

> **Additional Information:**   See Define System Options in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*. See also Defining Receivables System Options in *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*.

Step 3 Update sales orders and invoices

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades **(Argentina and Colombia)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Oracle Financials for Latin America
TUMS Step Key?	JL_UPDATE_SALES_ORDERS

This step is a part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade. If you are using multi-organization functionality, repeat this step for each organization.

Before you update sales orders and invoices, create obsolete tax codes, categories, and classes for previous transactions and associate the obsolete tax categories with condition and values so that you can view previously created transactions.

To create obsolete tax codes, categories, and classes for previous transactions:

Use the Argentine Receivables or Colombian Receivables responsibility for this step.

1. Create a tax category.

   In the Latin Tax Categories window (Argentine /or Colombian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Categories), create a tax category.

In this field...	Enter this value...
Tax Code	OBS-TC
Effective From	01-JAN-1951
Effective To	31-DEC-4712
Threshold Check Level	Line
Grouping Condition Type	Line
Grouping Condition	Line

   > **Additional Information:** See Define Tax Categories in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide.*

2. Create a tax code.

   In the Tax Codes and Rates window (Argentina—Standard AR > Setup > Tax > Codes, or Colombia—Oracle Receivables > Setup > Tax > Codes), create a tax code.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Tax Code	OBS-TAX-CODE
Tax Type	Value Added Tax (VAT)
Taxable Basis	Before Discount
Tax Rate %	0.00
Effective Dates - From	01-JAN-1951
Effective Dates - To	<Leave blank>

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Enabled	Checked
Displayed	Checked
Tax Category (in Globalization Flexfield)	OBS-TC

> **Additional Information:** See Define Tax Codes and Rates in *Oracle Receivables Tax User's Guide*.

3. Create a fiscal classification code.

   In the Latin Fiscal Classifications window (Argentine /or Colombian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Fiscal Classifications), create a fiscal classification code.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Fiscal Classification Code	OBS-FISCAL
Displayed Value	OBS-FISCAL
Description	OBS-FISCAL
Start Date Active	01-JAN-1951
End Date Active	31-DEC-4712
Tax Category	OBS-TC
From Date	01-JAN-1951
To Date	31-DEC-4712
Tax Code	OBS-TAX-CODE
Enabled	Checked

> **Additional Information:** See Define Fiscal Classifications in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

4. Create a transaction class.

   In the Latin Tax Condition Classes window (Argentine /or Colombian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Condition Classes), create a transaction class.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Class Type	Transaction Class
Class Code	OBS-TRANS-CLASS
Description	OBS-TRANS-CLASS
Start Date Active	01-JAN-1951
End Date Active	31-DEC-4712
Tax Category	OBS-TC
Condition Code	OBS-COND
Value Code	OBS-VALUE
Enabled	Checked

> **Additional Information:** See Define Tax Condition Classes for Transactions in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

To associate obsolete tax category with condition and values:

In the Associate Latin Tax Category with Conditions and Values window (Argentine /or Colombian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Conditions and Values), associate tax category OBS-TC with OBS-COND condition and OBS-VALUE value.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Tax Category	OBS-TC
Condition Type	Transaction Condition
Condition Name	OBS-COND
Mandatory In Class	Checked
Determining Factor	Checked
Grouping Attribute	Checked
Value	OBS-VALUE
Default To Class	Checked

> **Additional Information:** See Associate Tax Categories with Tax Conditions and Values in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

To update sales orders and invoices:

Run the following scripts to fill in the Tax Code, Fiscal Classification Code, and Transaction Condition Class fields with default values for all order lines and invoice lines. The script populates the Tax Code field only if it is blank. Specify the value for Country Code: AR (Argentina) or CO (Colombia).

> **Note:** These are potentially long-running. Plan your upgrade schedule accordingly.

To update sales orders, run jlzztu01.sql. Use jlzztu01.lst to review the results.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu01.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %JL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu01.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

To update invoices, run jlzztu02. Use jlzztu02.lst to review the results.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu02.sql <Country Code> \
  OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %JL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu02.sql <Country Code> \
     OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

> **Additional Information:** See Entering Transactions in *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*. See also *Oracle Financials for Argentina User's Guide* and *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*.

Step 4 Add warehouse name information

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Argentina, Brazil, and Colombia)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Argentina User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Financials for Latin America
TUMS Step Key?	JL_ADD_WAREHOUSE_INFO

Warehouse information is mandatory for a transaction *if* the invoice line is an item line, *and* you selected *Latin Tax Handling* as the tax method in the Define System Options window. If you want to modify upgraded transactions, enter the warehouse in the Warehouse Name field on the Transactions workbench. The warehouse that you enter defines an item validation organization for the ship-from location for this item line.

Step 5 Associate tax information for each inventory organization location

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades **(Brazil)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Financials for Latin America
TUMS Step Key?	JL_ASSOCIATE_TAX_INFO

Perform this step only if you have *not* applied update 786842 (Inventory org update). This step is part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade.

From the Brazilian Receivables responsibility, enter a valid value for the Organization Class field in the globalization flexfield of the Location window (Standard AR > Setup > System > Organizations > Location). Perform this step for each inventory organization location, if you are using multi-org functionality.

> **Additional Information:** See Assign Tax Condition Classes to Organizations, Setting Up Globalization Flexfields in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

Step 6 Associate tax groups and tax categories

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades **(Argentina, Brazil, and Colombia)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Financials for Latin America
TUMS Step Key?	JL_ASSOCIATE_TAX_GROUPS

As a part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade, perform this step if you *have not* previously applied update 839884.

From the Brazilian Receivables responsibility, use the Latin Tax Groups window (Brazilian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Groups) to set up this association. Ensure that all tax groups have at least one tax category.

> **Additional Information:**   See Define Tax Group in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

Step 7 Cancel and re-enter all unapproved and unposted invoices

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades **(Argentina and Colombia)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Payables User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Financials for Latin America
TUMS Step Key?	JL_CANCEL_UNAPPROVED_INVOICES

Complete this step only if you *did not* install Latin American country-specific functionality in Release 11. You must re-enter all invoices that were/are to be transferred from the previous period to the new period so that they have the withholding applicability, or the additional information to make the Extended Withholding feature to function correctly.

To activate the Extended Withholding applicability, complete the setup steps described in the Oracle Payables chapter of the *Oracle Financials for Argentina/Colombia User's Guide*.

> **Additional Information:**   See Cancelling Invoices and Entering Invoices in *Oracle Payables User's Guide*.

Step 8 Archive restored technical appraisals

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades **(Colombia)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Financials for Latin America
Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	JL_ARCHIVE_RESTORED_APPRAISALS

Re-archive technical appraisals that you restored in Step 2 of the Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks in Chapter 1.

> **Additional Information:**   See Archiving, Purging, and Restoring Technical Appraisals in *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*.

Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Projects tasks.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Review organization hierarchies and uses of organizations	Required	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
2.	Update project status values	Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
3.	Update customized billing extensions	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
4.	Review and update billing cycle names	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
5.	Convert custom overtime calculation program to PL/SQL	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
6.	Populate billing title for employee assignments	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
7.	Set up the invoice rounding account	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
8.	Add new parameters to custom invoice-related client extensions	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
9.	Add new parameters to custom transaction control extension	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
10.	Add new currencies and non-recoverable tax amounts to commitment views	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
11.	Update custom code that populates the Transaction Interface table	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
12.	Reinstall custom client extension packages and views	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
13.	Correct FIFO marking of expenditure items	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1 Review organization hierarchies and uses of organizations

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects
TUMS Step Key?	PA_REVIEW_ORG_HIERARCHIES

In Release 10.7 and earlier, you could control which organizations were used as Project Task Owning/Invoice Organizations by Operating Unit. That is, the same organization could be a Project/Task Owning/Invoice Organization in one operating unit but not in a different one. This could happen if you had specified different Project Organization Types for the operating units in the PA implementations option.

In Release 11.0 and later, the Project Organization type is not used to identify the organizations that own project/tasks or invoices. Instead, the organization classifications Project/Task Owning Organization and Invoice Organization specified at the organization level are used for this purpose. (Organizations are shared among operating units in a business group). Therefore, after the upgrade, you might have organizations in some operating units that you did not intend to use as Project/Task

Owning or Invoice Organizations. Run the following script to determine the organizations that were upgraded under this condition:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @paupgor2.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @paupgor2.sql
```

The script paupgor2.sql creates paxupor2.lst in $PA_TOP/admin/sql (UNIX) or %PA_TOP%/admin/sql (Windows). It shows the organizations for each operating unit that you designated in Release 10.7 or earlier as project or invoice organizations.

If the report contains any data, define a new organization hierarchy for each related operating unit that does not contain the listed organizations. Then, assign the new organization hierarchy as the new Project/Task Owning or Invoice Organization in the PA Implementation Options.

To build an organization hierarchy:

1. Navigate to the Organization Hierarchy window (Setup > Human Resources > Organizations > Hierarchies).

2. Enter a new organization hierarchy, or copy an organization hierarchy from an existing one and modify it.

3. Save your work.

To assign the new organization hierarchy as the new Project/Task Owning or Invoice Organization:

1. Navigate to the Implementation Options window (Setup > System > Implementation Options).

2. Select the Project Setup tab.

3. Enter the new organization hierarchy you created in the appropriate Organization Hierarchy field - Project/Task owning or Invoice.

> **Additional Information:**   See Organizations in Oracle Projects, Organization Hierarchy, and Implementation Options in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 2 Update project status values

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects
TUMS Step Key?	PA_UPDATE_PROJ_STATUS_VALUES

You can now enter values for the System Status field in the Project Status window. During the upgrade, Oracle Projects populated each of the user-defined project statuses with the System Status of Upgraded. Update each of these statuses with the appropriate System Status value.

1. Navigate to the Project Statuses window (choose Setup > Projects > Statuses).

2. Query all the records with a System Status of Upgraded.

3. For each of the project statuses displayed, select the appropriate System Status from the list of values. You can also change the status controls (actions allowed for each project status), which were set to default values during the upgrade.

4. Save your changes.

5. Run the query until there are no records with a System Status of Upgraded.

> **Additional Information:** See Project Statuses in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 3 Update customized billing extensions

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects
TUMS Step Key?	PA_UPDATE_CUSTOMIZED_BILLING_EXT

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing and use predefined public procedures in billing extensions.

Oracle Projects provides public procedures to be used in billing extensions. The names of these procedures have been changed to comply with Oracle Applications naming standards. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in your billing extensions, modify the extensions to use the new procedure names.

Old Name: package.procedure	New Name: package.procedure
pb_public.insert_event	pa_billing_pub.insert_event
pb_public.insert_message	pa_billing_pub.insert_message
pb_public.get_budget_amount	pa_billing_pub.get_budget_amount

In addition, new parameters have been added to the procedures. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in the billing extensions, then add these new parameters to the billing extensions. The new parameters that have been added to the public procedures are:

Package.Procedure	New Parameters
pa_billing_pub.insert_event	x_audit_amount(1-10)
	x_audit_cost_budget_type_code
	x_audit_rev_budget_type_code
	x_error_message
	x_status
pa_billing_pub.insert_message	x_error_message
	x_status

Package.Procedure	New Parameters
pa_billing_pub.get_budget_amount	p_cost_budget_type_code
	p_rev_budget_type_code
	x_cost_budget_type_code
	x_rev_budget_type_code
	x_error_message
	x_status

> **Additional Information:**   See Billing Extensions in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 4 Review and update billing cycle names

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects
TUMS Step Key?	PA_REVIEW_CYCLE_NAMES

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing.

The project billing cycle data has been upgraded to the enhanced billing cycle model. Billing cycles were created, based on existing projects, as follows:

Billing Cycle Field	Value
Name	Billing Cycle Days: *n* (*n* = the value of Bill Cycle Days)
Type	Bill Cycle Days
Bill Cycle Days	The value of Billing Cycle for a project

Each project was associated with the new billing cycle name.You can change them if necessary:

1. Navigate to the Billing Cycles window (Setup > Billing > Billing Cycle). It displays the Name, Type, Value, and Effective Dates for all billing cycles created during the upgrade.

2. Review the upgraded billing cycle names and change as appropriate. Save your work.

> **Additional Information:**   See Billing Cycles in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 5 Convert custom overtime calculation program to PL/SQL

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects
TUMS Step Key?	PA_CONVER T_CUSTOM_CALC

Perform this step only if you have implemented Projects Overtime Calculation.

The overtime calculation process was converted to the Overtime Calculation Extension, a PL/SQL procedure in PAXDLCOS.pls and PAXDLCOB.pls, located in the admin/sql directory. If you have customized PAXDLCOT.rpt, rewrite the customizations in the new files.

> **Additional Information:** See Overtime Calculation Extension in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 6 Populate billing title for employee assignments

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects
TUMS Step Key?	PA_POPULATE_BILLING_TITLES

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing and implemented employee billing titles for invoice formats.

Oracle Projects now looks for an employee billing title in the TITLE column of the PER_ASSIGNMENTS_F table, instead of in the descriptive flexfield column (ASS_ATTRIBUTE1) of the same table. You must populate the billing title on the employee assignments in the new column. A sample script populates the TITLE column with the contents of the ASS_ATTRIBUTE1 column and sets the ASS_ATTRIBUTE1 column to null. If the flexfield has been set up, modify this script appropriately. To run the script:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa11u506.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa11u506.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** See Employees and Employee Assignments in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 7 Set up the invoice rounding account

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects
TUMS Step Key?	PA_SETUP_INVOICE_ROUNDING_ACCT

If you have Project Billing installed, set up the Rounding AutoAccounting Function Transaction for the function Transfer Revenue and Invoice Account, regardless of whether you plan to bill customers in currencies other than the project functional currency.

1. Navigate to the Assign AutoAccounting Rules window (choose Setup > AutoAccounting > Assign Rules).

2. In the Function Name field, select Revenue and Invoice Accounts, then choose Find. The function transactions for Revenue and Invoice Accounts are displayed in the Function Transactions region.

3. Check the Enabled check box to enable the Rounding Account. Enter segment rule pairings to set up the account. Save your work.

> **Additional Information:** See AutoAccounting in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 8 Add new parameters to custom invoice-related client extensions

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects
TUMS Step Key?	PA_ADD_NEW_PARA_CUST_CLIENT_EXT

Complete this step only if you have Project Billing installed and have customized the Automatic Invoice Approve/Release client extension or the AR Transaction Types client extension.

The following table lists procedures and the file where each is located. If your company uses any of these client extensions, add the new parameters to the client extensions. The files are located in $PA_TOP/admin/sql (UNIX) or %PA_TOP%\admin\sql (Windows).

Client Extension	Procedure Name	File
AR Transaction Types	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Transfer.Get_AR_Trx_Type	PAXPTRXB.pls
Automatic Invoice Approve/Release	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Actions.Approve_Invoice	PAXPIACB.pls
Automatic Invoice Approve/Release	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Actions.Release_Invoice	PAXPIACB.pls

The following parameters have been added to these client extensions:

Parameter Name	Description
p_project_currency_code	project currency code
p_project_amount	project currency amount
p_inv_currency_code	invoice currency code
p_invoice_amount	invoice currency amounts

> **Additional Information:** See AR Transaction Types Extension and Automatic Invoice Approval/Release Extension in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 9 Add new parameters to custom transaction control extension

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects

If you have customized any of the following Transaction Control extensions in Project Costing, add the associated parameter to the customized extension.

Parameter Name	Description
x_denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
x_denom_raw_cost	transaction currency raw cost amount
x_acct_currency_code	functional currency code
x_acct_raw_cost	functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_attribute11	descriptive flexfield segment 11
x_attribute15	descriptive flexfield segment 15
x_vendor_id	supplier identifier for supplier invoice transactions
x_msg_application	application identifier for the out message
x_msg_type	type of message (error or warning)
x_token1	token for display with message
x_token2	token for display with message
x_token3	token for display with message

> **Additional Information:**   See Client Extensions in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 10 Add new currencies and non-recoverable tax amounts to commitment views

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide, Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, and Oracle Project Management User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects

For the PA_COMMITMENT_TXNS_V table, add these new columns.

New Column	Description
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_raw_cost	transaction currency raw cost amount
denom_burdened_cost	transaction currency burdened cost amount
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_raw_cost	functional currency raw cost amount
acct_burdened_cost	functional currency burdened cost amount
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
receipt_currency_code	receipt currency code
receipt_currency_ amount	receipt currency amount
receipt_exchange_rate	receipt currency exchange rate

These columns have been deleted: tot_cmt_raw_cost, tot_cmt_burdened_cost, amount_delivered.

For the PA_PROJ_REQ_DISTRIBUTIONS and the PA_PROJ_PO DISTRIBUTIONS tables add the following columns. The AMOUNT column has been changed to include non-recoverable taxes.

New Column	Description
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_amount	transaction currency amount (including non-recoverable tax amount)
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount

For the PA_PROJ_AP_INV_DISTRIBUTIONS add the following columns. This table is updated to include rows for non-recoverable tax invoice lines.

New Column	Description
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_amount	transaction currency amount (including non-recoverable tax amount)
acct_currency_code	functional currency code

New Column	Description
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
receipt_currency_code	receipt currency code
receipt_currency_amount	receipt currency amount
receipt_exchange_rate	receipt currency exchange rate

The following views in other applications have also been updated to include foreign currency columns and non-recoverable tax amounts:

- CST_PROMFG_CMT_VIEW

- PJM_REQ_COMMITMENTS_V

- PJM_PO_COMMITMENTS_V

> **Additional Information:** See Commitments in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*. See also *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide* and *Oracle Project Management User's Guide*.

Step 11 Update custom code that populates the Transaction Interface table

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects

Perform this step only if you use the Transaction Import program in Project Costing.

New columns have been added to the Transaction Interface table (PA_TRANSACTION_INTERFACE_ALL) to support multi-currency transactions and supplier invoices import. If you use the Transaction Import program to import costed transactions, update all custom programs that populate this table. For costed transactions, insert raw cost into the denom_raw_cost column, and burdened cost into the denom_burdened_cost column. The list of new columns is on Page 25-26 of *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

Step 12 Reinstall custom client extension packages and views

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Projects

You backed up custom client extensions or commitment views in Step 3 of the Oracle Projects Tasks in Chapter 3. Reinstall the customized client extension packages and views in the APPS account.

> **Additional Information:** See Client Extensions in *Oracle Projects User's Guide*.

Step 13 Correct FIFO marking of expenditure items

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Oracle Projects
TUMS Step Key?	PA_CORRECT_FIFO

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to FIFO marking of expenditure items with scheduled payment events in the Generate Draft Invoices process, for projects using the revenue accrual method Cost or Event. Prior to this upgrade, the Generate Draft Invoices process marked as "billed" all the expenditure items with an expenditure item date earlier than the bill through date of the process. Projects now marks expenditure items for scheduled payment events as "billed", only up to the event amount.

Run pa630505.sql from the new APPL_TOP to correct the Billed flag for expenditure items that were incorrectly marked for scheduled payment events.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa630505.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa630505.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number.

To reduce processing time, a Start Project Number and an End Project Number to run the script for a range of projects. *Make sure that you run the script for all projects*.

Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Grants Accounting tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Verify AutoAccounting rules	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist / Applications Specialist (Grants Accounting)
2. Set up AutoAccounting for Burden transactions	Required	Technical Specialist / Applications Specialist (Grants Accounting)

Step 1 Verify AutoAccounting rules

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide*
Do before using?	Grants Accounting
TUMS Step Key?	GMS_VERIFY_ACCTG_RULES_AWARD_INFO_SQL

Grants Accounting (formerly known as Grants Management), Award ID is now stored in a separate table (GMS_AWARD_DISTRIBUTIONS), and no longer in the ATRIBUTE1 column in the PA_EXPENDITURE_ITEMS_ALL table. If you referred to the ATTRIBUE1 column from PA_EXPENDITURE_ITEMS_ALL in any of the AutoAccounting Rules SQL statements, change the SQL to reference the AWARD_ID column in the GMS_AWARD_DISTRIBUTIONS table instead.

> **Note:** See *Grants Accounting eTRM (Electronic Technical Reference Manual)* for more information.

Step 2 Set up AutoAccounting for Burden transactions

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide; Oracle Projects User's Guide*
Do before using?	Grants Accounting
TUMS Step Key?	GMS_SETUP_AUTOACCTG_BURDEN_TXACTS

Set up the AutoAccounting rules for the Burden Cost account and Burden Cost Clearing account:

1. Navigate to the Assign AutoAccounting Rules window (Setup > AutoAccounting > Assign Rules).

2. In the Function Name field, select Burden Cost Account, and choose Find. View the associated function transactions in the Function Transactions region.

3. Check the Enabled check box to enable the appropriate function transaction names. Enter segment rule pairings to set up the account. Save your work.

4. Repeat these steps for the Burden Cost Clearing function.

Human Resources

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Human Resources products you have installed.

> **Note:** For information on legislation data, see Post-install Steps, *Implementing Oracle HRMS* or the HRMS online help.

Oracle Payroll Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Payroll tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Run the exchange rate migration script	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator
2. Associate a set of books with an organizational payment method	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (HR)

Step 1 Run the exchange rate migration script

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Oracle Human Resources
TUMS Step Key?	PER_RUN_EXCHNGE_RATE_MIGRATION

In prior releases, exchange rates were stored in the Oracle Payroll exchange rates table (PAY_EXCHANGE_RATES_F). They are now stored in the Oracle General Ledger (GL) exchange rates system.

> **Note:** You do not need Oracle GL in order to make use of the new exchange rate entry form.

If you use exchange rates, migrate the existing exchange rates from Payroll to General Ledger by running the following script:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $PAY_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pyrtmig.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %PAY_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pyrtmig.sql
```

From the list of Business Groups, select one to migrate and enter its ID. From the list of payrolls for which exchange rates exist, select the master payroll for this Business Group. To exit, leave blank and press Enter.

An exchange rate for a given date may exist on different payrolls. To prevent this occurrence in GL, existing rates for a given date are overwritten by the new rate. The master payroll is the last payroll rate to be migrated, so the master rate takes precedence for rates on different payrolls.

Select a Conversion Type for the rates to be created. You cannot select the standard GL types, such as Corporate or Spot, to avoid conflict with rates created by other applications. The Conversion Type must begin with HR. If the name you enter does not exist, a new Conversion Type is created.

Enter Y to continue. The system reports the number of rows processed, and the error and rate details of rows that failed.

Step 2 Associate a set of books with an organizational payment method

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Using Oracle HRMS: The Fundamentals*
Do before using?	Oracle Human Resources
TUMS Step Key?	PER_ASS_SOB_ORG_PAYMENT

This step is required only if your payroll implementation has Cash Management installed. For more information, see Accounting Reference Information for Cash Management Integration, *Implementing Oracle HRMS*.

Oracle Time and Labor Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Time and Labor tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Determine corrective actions for Time and Labor	Required	Applications Specialist

Step 1 Determine corrective actions for Time and Labor

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Oracle Time and Labor

Run the OTLR Business Group Update report to determine if further actions are necessary to use Oracle Time and Labor functionality. Business decisions about which actions are necessary must be made at this time before you can correctly update the data.

 From the Oracle Time and Labor responsibility, run the report from the Processes and Reports menu. The messages in the report are further explained in Output Sample For the OTLR Business Group Update Report on Oracle*MetaLink* (Doc ID 235050.1). Some report messages are informational, and some require action. If an action is indicated, perform it as described, then re-run the report. Repeat this cycle until no corrective action messages are reported.

Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Labor Distribution.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Determine corrective actions	Required	Application Specialist

Step 1 Determine corrective actions

This step is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Oracle Labor Distribution

Run the Labor Distribution Upgrade Invalid Objects report to determine any Labor Distribution tables that have invalid HRMS business group IDs or GL Sets of Books IDs after the upgrade.

The report output lists the Labor Distribution tables where the HRMS business group or GL Sets of Books could not be upgraded, and have been assigned a value of -999. Data that corresponds to these records will not be accessible through the application.

Run the report from Processes and Reports menu using the Labor Distribution Superuser responsibility. Data issues can be caused by inconsistent data prior to running the 11.5.10 upgrade. If there are issues, examine them individually to determine whether corrective action is required. The messages in the report are further

explained in *Output Sample for Labor Distribution Upgrade Invalid Objects* report on Oracle*MetaLink* (Doc ID 270447.1).

After you complete the required actions, re-run the report. Repeat the cycle until no more corrective action messages are reported.

Oracle Learning Management Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Learning Management.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Verify Data Migration Error Log report	Required	Application Specialist

Step 1 Verify Data Migration Error Log report

This step is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Oracle Learning Management

The Learning Management upgrade requires data migration. The Upgrade Error Log report is automatically submitted during the upgrade and must be reviewed to determine if further actions are required.

> **Note:**   Oracle Learning Management was known as Oracle Training Administration in previous releases.

Any actions identified require a business decision to correctly upgrade the data. Follow the instructions in the *Guide to the OTA Classic Upgrade Report* on Oracle*MetaLink* (Doc ID 269571.1) to successfully complete the upgrade.

Manufacturing

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Manufacturing products you have installed.

Oracle Cost Management Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Cost Management tasks.

Task List	Status	Menu Responsibility > Function / Responsibility
1. Verify balances in WIP Value reports	Recommended	Manufacturing/Distribution Manager > Cost/Application Specialist (Cost Management and/or Inventory)
2. Define default material subelement – Average Costing	Conditionally Required	Manufacturing/Distribution Manager > Cost/Application Specialist (Inventory or Cost Management)
3. Define Average Rates cost type – Average Costing	Conditionally Required	Manufacturing/Distribution Manager > Cost/Application Specialist (Inventory or Cost Management)

Step 1 Verify balances in WIP Value reports

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Cost Management User's Guide; Oracle Inventory User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Cost Management, Inventory, or WIP

Follow the instructions in Step 2 of the Oracle Cost Management Tasks in Category 3 to run this report. Compare the balances from this report with the balances from the Category 3 report.

Step 2 Define default material subelement – Average Costing
This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Cost Management User's Guide; Oracle Inventory User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Cost Management
TUMS Step Key?	CST_DEFINE_AVERAGE_COSTING

If you have defined this subelement previously, omit this step. If you are using Oracle Project Management, as the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose Cost. Navigate to the Material Subelements window (Setup > Subelements > Material).

> **Additional Information:** See Defining Subelements in *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide*.

Step 3 Define Average Rates cost type – Average Costing
This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Cost Management User's Guide; Oracle Inventory User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Cost Management
TUMS Step Key?	CST_DEFINE_AVERAGE_RATES

If you have previously defined average rates cost types, you can omit this step. This cost type supports material overhead and WIP resources. To define Average Rates costs types, navigate to Setup > Cost Types.

> **Additional Information:** See Defining Cost Types in *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide*.

Oracle MRP/Supply Chain Planning Tasks
Perform the following Oracle MRP/Supply Chain Planning tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Define sales orders history cutoff date	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning)
2. Start the Planning Manager	Required	Application Specialist (Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning)

Step 1 Define sales orders history cutoff date
This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning User's Guide*
Do before using?	Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning

Set the MRP:Old Sales Orders Cutoff Days profile option to specify a previous date to be used as a cutoff for sales orders history. The system creates history from the current date back to the date you specify. If you do not provide a value for this profile option, the system uses 9999 — sales history is reported from the current date back 9999 days.

Then, run MRPCLNUP.sql to bring up data from Order Management to Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning for forecast consumption and planning of sales order demand based on the MRP:Old Sales Orders Cutoff Days.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $MRP_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @MRPCLNUP.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %MRP_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @MRPCLNUP.sql
```

Step 2 Start the Planning Manager

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning User's Guide*
Do before using?	Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning

The Planning Manager performs many tasks that require processing rows in an interface table, such as forecast consumption, master production schedule consumption, forecast interface load, schedule interface load, and master demand schedule relief. After the upgrade, rerun the MPS, MRP, and DRP plans in order to review planning information.

1. Navigate to the Planning Manager window (Setup > Planning Manager).

2. Enter the processing interval for the Planning Manager and click Start.

> **Additional Information:**   See Starting the Planning Manager and Planning Manager in *Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning*.

Logistics

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Logistics products you have installed.

Oracle Inventory Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Inventory tasks.

Task List	Status	Menu Responsibility > Function / Responsibility
1. Review and correct organization default accounts - INV	Recommended	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory/Application Specialist (Inventory)
2. Verify totals in inventory valuation reports - INV	Recommended	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost/Application Specialist (Inventory)

Step 1 Review and correct organization default accounts - INV

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Inventory User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Inventory

Review and correct, as necessary, organization default accounts — sales and expense.

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose Inventory. Navigate to the Organization Parameters window (Setup > Organizations > Parameters) and select the Costing Information tabbed region.

2. Update default account information and save your work.

    Additional Information: See Organization Parameters Window in *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Step 2 Verify totals in inventory valuation reports - INV

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Inventory User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Inventory

Run the same inventory valuation reports that you ran in Step 3 of the Oracle Inventory Tasks in Chapter 3 (Elemental Value, Subinventory Value, and if you use intransit, the Intransit Value), using the same sort options with the default Release 11*i* parameters.

The totals by subinventory, subinventory account, cost element, and report totals should match. If they do not, compare the reports for any quantity or value differences, and proceed accordingly. Contact Oracle Support Services if you are unable to balance the reports.

Order Management

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Order Management products you have installed.

Oracle Order Management Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Order Management tasks.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Set up responsibilities for order creation/manipulation	Required	Applications Specialist (Order Management/Shipping)
2.	Review upgraded transaction types	Required	Applications Specialist (Order Management)
3.	Set up processing constraints	Required	Applications Specialist (Order Management)
4.	Set up flexfield definitions	Required	System Administrator
5.	Set up Workflow Notification approver and update Workflow item attributes	Required	Applications Specialist (Order Management/Shipping)
6.	Generate and review upgrade error report	Recommended	System Administrator/Applications Specialist (Order Management)
7.	Review Pricing upgrade errors	Recommended	System Administrator/Applications Specialist (Order Management)

Step 1 Set up responsibilities for order creation/manipulation

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*
Do before using?	Order Entry/Shipping

AutoUpgrade creates ontupg48.lst. It lists the FND_USER(created_by)/Org combinations on all open headers and lines. The list is located in $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (Windows), where <SID> is the value of the ORACLE_SID or TWO_TASK.

Creating the list manually:

If you cannot find this file, run ontupg48.sql manually. The list file (ontupg48.lst) is created in the current directory.

UNIX:
```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg48.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg48.sql
```

Then, follow these steps:

1. Set up one (or more) OM (or non-OM) responsibilities for order creation/manipulation for every organization. At a minimum, set the ORG_ID(MO: Operating Unit) profile on these responsibilities (in a multi-org environment). From the System Administrator responsibility, choose Profile > System.

2. Assign appropriate responsibilities to each FND_USER based on the listing in ontupg48.lst. From the System Administrator responsibility, choose Security > User > Define. If, for a given FND_USER, there is more than one responsibility pointing to the same organization, set the OM:Context Responsibility for Upgraded Orders profile option to Yes on *only one responsibility*. This responsibility, the application tied to it, and the User (who created the Order or line), are used to set application context for Upgraded Orders and Lines as they are processed (in the background).

For example: There are 4 distinct users who have access to 3 distinct operating units in which they have created orders or lines.

User ID	Name	Org ID	Organization
1894	NDSMITH	498	Vision ADB
1894	NDSMITH	204	**US** Vision Operations US
1737	ECLARKE	600	Vision Project Manufacturing
1001	VISION	204	**US** Vision Operations JS
2501	DMARTIN	600	Vision Project Manufacturing

You would create 3 new OM or non-OM responsibilities (if you plan to use a custom application on top of OM). Since this example is multi-org, set the MO: Operating Unit profile option to the appropriate value on each of these new responsibilities. And, set the OM:Context Responsibility for Upgraded Orders to Yes to flag each one for use in the cycle history upgrade. Assign these new responsibilities appropriately to the 4 users so that they have access to the same organizations that they did in the previous release. This results in only one flagged responsibility per Operating Unit for each of those 4 users. This responsibility, and the application tied to it, are used to set application context for Upgraded Orders and Lines.

3. Validate the responsibilities settings for the user/org combinations you created.

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg49.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg49.sql
   ```

   If you find errors in the report (ontupg49.lst), correct the settings and re-run the script to make sure the settings are correct.

   > **Note:** You must correct errors in ontupg49.lst before you complete the next step in order to process affected orders/lines.

Step 2 Review upgraded transaction types

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Management User's Guide*
Do before using?	Order Management

1. Review the upgraded order and line types. Select Setup > Transaction Types > Define. Because the upgraded assignments cannot be used for new orders or lines, you must create new flow assignments.

2. Review document sequences that were upgraded (based on order number sources in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Define.

3. Review the document categories that were upgraded (based on order types in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Categories.

4. Review the document sequence assignments that were upgraded (based on the order number source assignments in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Assign.

Step 3 Set up processing constraints

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Management User's Guide*
Do before using?	Order Management

To set up processing constraints required for the OM entities, select Setup > Rules > Security > Processing Constraints.

> **Additional Information:**   See *Oracle Order Management User's Guide*.

Step 4 Set up flexfield definitions

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Management User's Guide*
Do before using?	Order Management

The upgrade automatically moves data from descriptive flexfield segments defined in the Order Entry tables to new tables in Order Management and registers new flexfields under Order Management for the new tables. To use this descriptive flexfield data, define and enable the flexfields according to your business needs. Select Application > Flexfield > Descriptive > Segments.

Step 5 Set up Workflow Notification approver and update Workflow item attributes

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Management User's Guide*
Do before using?	Order Management

Oracle Order Management converts Approval Actions to workflow Notification Activities during the upgrade. The OM:Notification Approver profile option determines who receives these notifications. To set up this process:

Set OM:Notification Approver

Set the value at any level to the desired Application Responsibility or User workflow role. If Order Management cannot find a value for this profile option, it sends approval notifications to SYSADMIN.

> **Note:** If you have multiple Operating Units, set this profile at a
> Responsibility level to create different Approver Roles for different
> Operating Units, based on the responsibility you are currently
> assigned.

Update Workflow Item attributes

Run ontup255.sql to update Workflow Item attributes. This script sets the following
workflow item attributes for all open Order Headers and Lines: Responsibility ID,
Application ID, Notification Approver.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/ont/11.5.0/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontup255.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\ont\11.5.0\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontup255.sql
```

The Notification Approver item attribute derives its value from the profile option
OM:Notification Approver. When a deferred flow is processed, the Workflow
Background Engine sets the application context using the Responsibility ID,
Application ID, and User ID workflow item attributes. The User ID workflow attribute
value is derived from the user who created the order or line.

Step 6 Generate and review upgrade error report

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Order Management User's Guide, Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*
Do before using?	Order Entry/ Shipping or Shipping Execution

Run the following script generate the upgrade error report:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc06.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc06.sql
```

Review ontexc06.lst for errors and recommendations for correcting them.

Step 7 Review Pricing upgrade errors

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Order Entry/ Shipping or Shipping Execution

To query for a list of Pricing upgrade errors, use Setup > View Upgrade Errors. The query lists the modules and supplies a description of each error.

Procurement

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Procurement products you have installed.

Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Purchasing tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Activate transaction managers for Multi-Org	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
2. Upgrade notifications	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
3. Set MRP profile options	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
4. Verify and modify sourcing rules	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
5. Verify date formats	Required	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
6. Verify RMA upgrade	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator

Step 1 Activate transaction managers for Multi-Org

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*
Do before using?	Purchasing in a Multi-Org setup
Concurrent Manager?	Yes

This step applies only to installations that have a Multi-Org setup.

Activate the PO Document Approval Manager and the Receiving Transaction Manager for *each* operating unit:

1. As System Administrator, navigate to the Administer Concurrent Managers window by choosing Concurrent > Manager > Administer.

2. Choose PO Document Approval Manager and then choose Activate. Choose Receiving Transaction Manager and then choose Activate. (If you don't see an Activate button, then the transaction manager is already activated.)

> **Additional Information:**   See Purchase Order Approval Workflow, Requisition Approval Workflow and Receiving Transaction Processor in *Oracle Applications Purchasing User's Guide*. See also *Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*.

Step 2 Upgrade notifications

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 (character-mode), NCA, or 10SC** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*
Do before using?	Purchasing
TUMS Step Key?	PO_UPGRADE_NOTIFICATIONS

The Notifications Summary window replaces the Notifications window, and all notifications are handled by Oracle Workflow technology. Workflow uses the approval controls and hierarchies you've already defined in Purchasing to route documents for approval. To upgrade notifications so that Release 11*i* recognizes existing notifications, run the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process after you set up Purchasing.

Upgrade existing notifications only if you currently have Purchasing documents from Release 10.7 that are pending approval.

> **Additional Information:** See Viewing and Responding to Notifications and Approval Workflows in *Oracle Applications Purchasing User's Guide*.

Before you upgrade notifications:

Be sure to:

- Submit workflow-related processes and verify that all Purchasing documents are either Closed, Finally Closed, Approved, or Incomplete — there should be no In Process documents.

- Reduce the number of existing notifications by responding to as many of them as you can.

- Decide whether to customize your workflow *now*. This upgrade updates notifications by routing them through whatever workflows you have now—for example, the default workflows included with this release of Oracle Purchasing. In general, only those documents that are submitted for approval *after* you customize an approval workflow are affected by that customized workflow. So, if you want the existing notifications to be routed according to a customized workflow, rather than the workflow that comes with this release of Purchasing, customize and test it before you perform these upgrade steps.

To upgrade existing notifications to Workflow notifications:

Complete the following steps for each operating unit.

1. Select Purchasing > Reports > Run.

2. In the Requests window, select Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 in the Request Name field and choose Submit Request.

3. After the process is complete (when it has changed from Pending to Completed in the Requests window), select it in the Requests window and choose View Output. If you see errors about workflow not being set up properly, see the *Oracle Workflow Administrator's Guide* for instructions.

4. The workflow process notifies the appropriate people of errors in the upgrade. Document preparers and approvers can monitor these notifications in the Notifications Summary window and take action as necessary.

5. After all notifications are upgraded, you may want to disable the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process so that no one tries to use it later. As the System Administrator, uncheck the Enabled check box in the Concurrent Programs window.

> **Additional Information:** See Concurrent Programs Window in
> *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance.*

Step 3 Set MRP profile options

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 character-mode** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Purchasing
TUMS Step Key?	PO_SET_MRP_PROFILE

In Step 1 of the Oracle Purchasing Tasks in Chapter 3, you could not modify the default profile option values for MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set and MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set for a character-based system. Provide values for these profile options now, before you continue with the next step.

Step 4 Verify and modify sourcing rules

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 character-mode, NCA, or 10SC** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*
Do before using?	Purchasing
TUMS Step Key?	PO_VERIFY_SOURCING_RULES

If you did not use AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7, omit this step.

AutoUpgrade converted all existing AutoSource rules to the enhanced sourcing rules and Approved Supplier List (ASL) entries. Specifically, it:

- Created sourcing rule entries in the Sourcing Rule window in Purchasing, using the percentage splits you previously defined in the AutoSource Rules window.

- Created global ASL entries, using the previous AutoSource rules.

- Assigned a supplier status of New to all suppliers in the Approved Supplier List window.

- Upgraded source documents with current effective dates, as well as dates that don't become effective until a future time.

To verify or modify sourcing rules:

Use any text editor to check the upgrade.out file for errors that might have occurred during the AutoUpgrade process. This file is located in $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX), where <SID> is the value of the $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK, in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (Windows), where <SID> is the value of the ORACLE_SID or LOCAL.

Fix errors as described in the file. Then, run the ASL Upgrade process in Purchasing. If there are no errors, proceed to the next step.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 character-mode:

AutoUpgrade records an error in the upgrade.out file. Because the MRP profile options could not be set before the upgrade, run the ASL Upgrade process now. It performs the same upgrade of AutoSource rules as AutoUpgrade.

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, navigate to Reports > Run and select ASL Upgrade in the Request Name field. In the Parameters window, enter a Supplier Status of New and an Upgrade Documents From option of Current and Future Rules. Then submit the request. *New and Current and Future Rules* are the only options supported by the ASL Upgrade process.

2. To verify that the AutoSource rules have been upgraded, open the Requisitions window in Purchasing and, in the Item field, enter an item number that previously had an AutoSource rule. Navigate to the Source Details tabbed region. If the correct Document Type, Document, Supplier and supplier Site appear as defaults, AutoSource rules have been successfully updated.

3. Disable the ASL Upgrade process. In the System Administrator responsibility, uncheck the Enabled check box in the Concurrent Programs window.

> **Additional Information:** See Concurrent Programs Window in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance.*

4. To make changes, additions, or enhancements to sourcing rules and ASL entries, use the Purchasing responsibility to navigate to the Define Supplier Statuses, Approved Supplier List, Sourcing Rule, and Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments windows.

> **Additional Information:** See Setting Up Automatic Sourcing in *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*.

Step 5 Verify date formats

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Purchasing

During the upgrade, the REVISED_DATE column in the Purchasing tables was changed from a Varchar2 to a Date format, and existing date information was moved from the REVISED_DATE column to a temporary table TEMP_REVISED_DATE. After the column is converted to a Date format, the upgrade script copies the original dates from TEMP_REVISED_DATE back into the affected tables. The TEMP_REVISED DATE table still contains the original data as a backup.

Before you run podold.sql (see Step 1 of the System Maintenance Tasks in Chapter 7), which drops unneeded database objects including the TEMP_REVISED_DATE table, review the following lists, located in $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (Windows):

```
po_headers_all.lst
po_headers_archive_all.lst
po_releases_all.lst
po_releases_archive_all.lst
```

Each file displays the format (data type) of the REVISED_DATE column and a list of dates in the affected table. Verify that the *data type* of REVISED_DATE is Date, and verify the dates themselves. Contact Oracle Support Services if you have problems.

If the files have no output, you can create the lists manually.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PO_TOP/admin/sql/pockrvdt.sql \
  <PO username> <PO password>
```

Windows

```
C:\> cd %APP:_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PO_TOP%\admin\sql\pockrvdt.sql \
  <PO username> <PO password>
```

The output is located in $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (Windows).

Step 6 Verify RMA upgrade

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Receiving

If you used return material authorizations (RMAs) in the previous release to authorize and receive customers' returns using Oracle Order Entry and Oracle Inventory, complete these steps to verify the RMA upgrade.

Review status of processed transactions:

Review the following list files created during the upgrade. They are located in $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID> \out (Windows).

```
rcv_rma_upgrade_errors.lst
rcv_rma_upgrade_success.lst
```

If the files contain no output, review these tables generated during the upgrade:

- RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_SUCCESS: successfully processed transactions

- RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS: transactions that were not upgraded due to errors

The RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_SUCCESS table contains the following information:

Column	Description
CREATION_DATE (DATE)	Date the record was created
RUN_MODE (VARCHAR2)	Indicator of whether the error was logged during the first upgrade (FIRST-RUN) or subsequently (RE-RUN)
RMA_INTERFACE_ID (NUMBER)	Internal unique interface identifier from the MTL_SO_RMA_INTERFACE table
SHIPMENT_HEADER_ID (NUMBER)	Shipment header identifier of the transaction generated in the Purchasing receiving tables

The RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS table contains the following information:

Column	Description
CREATION_DATE (DATE)	Date the record was created
RUN_MODE (VARCHAR2)	Indicator of whether the error was logged during the first upgrade (FIRST-RUN) or subsequently (RE-RUN)
RMA_INTERFACE_ID (NUMBER)	Internal unique interface identifier from the MTL_SO_RMA_INTERFACE table
ERR_NUMBER (NUMBER)	
ERR_MESSAGE (VARCHAR2)	

The upgrade transfers RMA all receipt data from Inventory to Purchasing. It logs all errors and continues upgrading the rest of the transactions.

> **Note:** If the RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS table or the RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_SUCCESS table already exists (for example, if you re-ran the upgrade), the upgrade script assumes a re-run and processes only the transactions with errors from the RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS table.

Fix errors:

Fix errors listed in RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS, and re-run the RMA upgrade script. You can ignore errors about old or obsolete data.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $PO_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @rcvrmaup.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %PO_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @rcvrmaup.sql
```

Public Sector

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector products you have installed.

Oracle Public Sector Financials Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Public Sector Financials tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Switch to new responsibilities	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Switch to new responsibilities

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

Requirement	Explanation
Do before using?	Public Sector Financials
TUMS Step Key?	PSA_ASSIGN_USER_RESPS

If you use Government/Not for Profit functionality, assign all users to:

- Public Sector General Ledger responsibilities
- Public Sector Payables responsibilities
- Public Sector Receivables responsibilities

Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks

Perform the following Oracle U.S. Federal Financials tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Migrate data to new tables	Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Migrate data to new tables

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 2.0 or 3.3** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Federal Financials
TUMS Step Key?	FV_MIGRATE_DATA

For Version 2.0 and 3.3, migrate U.S. Federal setup data to the new tables. Review fvupdata.log for errors.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupdata.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupdata.sql
```

Marketing and Sales

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Marketing and Sales products you have installed.

Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Sales/Oracle Sales Compensation.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Migrate FND responsibilities/profiles	Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Migrate FND responsibilities/profiles

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

Oracle Marketing and Sales has been divided into three applications: Oracle Sales (OS), Oracle Sales Online (OSO), and Oracle TeleSales (OTS). If responsibilities are defined for product_id 279 in Release 10.7, Release 11.0.x, or Release 3i, and you want the users having these responsibilities to access Oracle Sales Online or Oracle TeleSales, you must migrate the responsibilities to the appropriate application.

The following OSM profiles are replace by new profiles. Set up the new profile options with the appropriate values.

Old Profile Option	New Profile Option
OSM:Access Privilege	OS:Customer Access Privilege
	OS:Opportunity Access Privilege
	OS:Manager Update Access
OSM:Country For Promotions	OSO:Default Country
OSM:Account Phone Type	OSO:Default Organization Phone Type
OSM:Quote Automatic Numbering	ASO:Automatic Numbering
OSM:Product Organization	OM:Item Validation Organization (obsolete)*
OSM:Quote Conversion Type	ASO:Quote Conversion Type
OSM:Quote Duration	ASO:Quote Duration
OSM:Quote Order Entered State	ASO:Default Order State
OSM:Quote Order Type	ASO:Default Order Type
OSM:Debut	OTS:Debug
OSM:Site Use	OTS:Default Site Usage
OSM:Currency Code	JTF_PROFILE_DEFAULT_CURRENCY
OSM:OFS Default Responsibility	JTF_PROFILE_DEFAULT_RESPONSIBILITY
OSM:OFS Date Format	ICX:Date format mask
OSM:To Do Default Priority	OSO:Default Activity Priority
OSM: To Do Default Status	OSO:Default Activity Status
OSM:OFS Number of Address Lines	OSO:Default Address Lines
OSM:OFS Default Business Line	OSO:Default Customer Category
OSM:Forecast Currency Code	OSO:Default Forecast Currency
OSM:OFS Number of Rows per Worksheet	OSO:Default forecast worksheet lines
OSM:OFS Forecast Calendar Default Months	OSO:Forecast Calendar Month

***This profile option is obsolete**. The organization now exists as a system parameter. From the Order Management responsibility, navigate to Setup > Parameters. Choose the organization from the list of values. See Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID 113386.1 for details.

Service

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Service products you have installed.

Oracle Service Tasks

Perform the following tasks for Oracle Service.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Update coverage transaction time zones	Required	Technical Specialist
2. Update migrated contacts and service lines	Required	Technical Specialist
3. Register Oracle Install Base	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Update coverage transaction time zones

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

The actions for this task differ according to your system release level.

If you are upgrading from 3i:

Any coverage transaction group that does not have an associated time zone is migrated with the value in the Service:UPG Time Zone for Contracts profile. No further action is necessary.

If you are upgrading from 10.7 or 11.0:

Any coverage transaction group line that does not have an associated time zone defaults to America/Tijuana (PST). To update the time zone for these records:

1. Set up the profile option OKS:Default Time Zone with the desired value.

2. Run the following script to update the time zone profile option value:

```
$ cd $OKS_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @OKS00TZU.sql
```

Step 2 Update migrated contacts and service lines

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	Yes

During the upgrade, all contracts and service lines are migrated with seeded statuses. Those with a custom status are migrated with a status of ENTERED. To update these records to the correct status values, run the following script:

```
$ cd $OKS_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @OKS00STU.sql
```

Step 3 Register Oracle Install Base

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*
Do before using?	Oracle Service, Oracle Install Base, Oracle Order Management, Oracle Purchasing, Oracle Inventory, Oracle Work in Process, Oracle Assets, Oracle Field Service

Oracle Service Install Base is now a separate product. If you used the Install Base features of Oracle Service before the upgrade, your data has been migrated to new tables under the Oracle Install Base product. Use OAM License Manager to register this new product so that it is recognized as active by maintenance utilities.

> **Additional Information:**   See Registering Individual Products in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

Oracle Install Base Tasks

Perform the following Oracle Install Base tasks.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Set up the Action menu in Order Management	Required	Technical Specialist
2.	Set up the Order Management workflow	Required	Technical Specialist
3.	Confirm Service Fulfillment Manager Event Queue set up	Required	Technical Specialist
4.	Create Agent users	Required	Technical Specialist
5.	Create Business users	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
6.	Schedule the Expire End Dated Instances concurrent program	Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Set up the Action menu in Order Management

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Install Base Implementation Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Order Management

To set up Transaction Details and Maintain Systems windows as part of the Action menu, complete the following steps:

1. Log on to Oracle Applications with the System Administrator responsibility.

2. Choose Applications > Menu.

3. Choose View > Query by Example > Enter.

4. In the Menu field, enter the string ONT_SALES_ORDERS.

5. Choose View > Query by Example > Run.

6. Go to the last record in the multi-record details block and choose File > New to create new records with the following Field Values:

   - Seq: Choose the next sequence.

   - Function: Select Install Base Transaction Details from the list of values.

- Seq: Choose the next sequence.

- Function: Select IB Maintain Systems from the list of values

7. Save the record.

Step 2 Set up the Order Management workflow

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Install Base Implementation Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Order Management

To cause sales orders to interact with the Install Base for non-shippable items, run the background workflow in a specific sequence, or set up the sales order workflow.

To update the workflow in Workflow Builder for Fulfill-only workflows:

1. Log on to Oracle Workflow Builder on the client PC using the *appsuser* ID, password, and connect string to connect to the database.

2. Select Installed Base, OM Order Line from the Show Item Types window and move them to the Visible window. Click Open.

3. Select OM Order Line > Processes. Right-click the Order Line that you want to customize and choose Copy. Right-click again and choose Paste.

4. Enter a different internal name for the newly created process. Then, double-click the process to open it.

5. Click New Function on the Top icon bar.

6. Click the Item Type drop-down list, and choose Installed Base. Then, click the Internal Name drop-down list, and choose Install Base Interface.

7. Delete the line after the Fulfill function (the line going out from the Fulfill to the node after Fulfill).

8. Pull the Install Base Interface after the Fulfill function. Right-click Fulfill and drag it to the Install Base Interface.

9. Right-click Install Base Interface and drag it to the node after Fulfill. Choose Any for the option results.

10. Save the changes and exit.

To set up Order Management changes in Applications:

1. From Order Management Super User > Setups > Transaction Types, query the transaction type you plan to use on the sales orders.

2. Click Assign Work Flows.

3. End-date the current line type that used the seeded workflow.

4. In the Menu field, enter the string ONT_SALES_ORDERS.

5. Choose View > Query by Example > Run.

6. Create another record with the same line type as the one that was expired, and tie the Customized Workflow process name created in Workflow to this line type.

Step 3 Confirm Service Fulfillment Manager Event Queue set up

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Install Base Implementation Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Order Management

Install Base is dependent on the Service Fulfillment Manager Event Manager Queue Service. For complete setup instructions, see *Oracle Service Fulfillment Manager Implementation Guide*. In general, the setup steps are as follows.

Installation and post-install steps (one-time only):

You must complete the Generic Service Management (GMS) post-install steps correctly. Otherwise, the SFM Event Manager Queue Service will not be activated. Contact Oracle Customer Support for a list of specific patch requirements.

Perform manual installation step (one-time only):

SFM provides a Queue Console for the database administrator to use to see the events sitting in the Event Manager Queue Service. Because SFM is installed in Shared Mode for the Install Base, you must compile the Queue Console form manually. It is located in $XDP_TOP/forms/US/XDPADQCS.fmb.

Deactivate services that are not used (one-time only):

When the database administrator starts the Internal Concurrent Manager (ICM), it also starts SFM services registered with GSM. Because Install Base is using only the SFM Event Manager Queue Service, you can deactivate all other SFM services.

1. Log on to Oracle Applications with SFM System Administrator responsibility.

2. From the Navigator menu, choose Concurrent > Administer Manager.

3. Deactivate all services that appear, except for the SFM Event Manager Queue Service.

Ensure that transactions processed in Install Base can be serialized (one-time only):

Transactions originating from Inventory and Order Management can be processed concurrently in Install Base. To ensure they are processed serially:

1. Log on to Oracle Applications and navigate to System Administrator > Concurrent > Manager > Define.

2. Query for the Manager SFM Event Manager Queue Service.

3. Click Work Shifts, and change the processes to 1.

4. In the Parameter field, change the value of XDP_DQ_INIT_NUM_THREADS to 1 (XDP_DQ_INIT_NUM_THREADS=1).

5. Stop and restart the SFM Event Manager Queue.

Monitor SFM Event Manager Queue Service (daily):

The database administrator can check to see if the Event Manager Queue Service is running from any of these locations:

- The SFM Queue Console (provides status as well as queue size)

- Concurrent Manager's Administer Manager form (provides only status)

- Oracle Application Manager (OAM) SFM page (HTML page used to view status and queue size)

Step 4 Create Agent users

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Install Base Implementation Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Order Management

Complete the following steps to create an agent user for an internal user with the CSI_ NORMAL_USER role and the responsibility of Oracle Install Base:

1. Log on to jtflogin as the SYSADMIN user.

2. From the Users tab, navigate to Users > Create User.

3. Select Individuals as the profile type, and enter personal information, enrollment information, and confirm registration.

4. Search for the user you just created and click the user name. Click Roles.

5. Using the single arrow button, move CSI_NORMAL_USER from the list box to the right-hand side. Click Update to assign the role to the user.

6. Log in to Forms as the system administrator responsibility.

7. From the Navigator, select Security > User. Query for the user you created in Step 2.

8. Add the Oracle Install Base User responsibility and any other responsibility this user might need.

9. Log in to jtflogin using the newly created user to set the default responsibility. You may also be prompted to change the password.

10. Once the first page is displayed, click Profile (above the menu bar).

11. Click Navigation Preference under Personalization in the sidebar menu.

12. Select Oracle Install Base User in the Current Responsibility drop-down list and again in the Default Responsibility drop-down list.

13. Click Update.

Step 5 Create Business users

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Install Base Implementation Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Order Management

Oracle Install Base supports many permissions with specific access and update privileges. See Section 2.5.22, Create Business Users in the *Oracle Install Base Implementation Guide* for a complete list.

A role is a combination of permissions. Install Base ships with two pre-defined roles: CSI_END_USER for business users and CSI_NORMAL_USER for internal agent users.

Complete the following steps to create a business user and assign it the pre-defined CSI_END_USER role and the responsibility of Oracle Install Base customer.

1. Log on to jtflogin as the SYSADMIN user.

2. From the Users tab, navigate to Users > Create User.

3. Select Organization as the profile type. Enter organization information, personal information, enrollment selection, and confirm registration.

4. Click Pending Approvals, select the user you created in Step 2, and click Accept.

5. Click User Maintenance and query for the user you just approved. Click the username.

6. Click Accounts, and select all necessary accounts to be assigned to the user. Click Update, and then Click Roles.

7. Using the single arrow button, move CSI_END_USER from the list box to the right-hand side. Click Update to assign the role to the user.

8. Log in to Forms, and switch to the system administrator responsibility.

9. From the Navigator, select Security > User. Query for the user you created in Step 2.

10. Add the Oracle Install Base User responsibility and any other responsibilities this user might need.

11. Log in to jtflogin using the newly created user to set the default responsibility. You may be prompted to change the password.

12. Once the first page is displayed, click Profile (above the menu bar).

13. Click Navigation Preference under Personalization in the sidebar menu.

14. Select Oracle Install Base User in the Current Responsibility drop-down list and again in the Default Responsibility drop-down list.

15. Click Update.

Step 6 Schedule the Expire End Dated Instances concurrent program
This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7, 11.0, or 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Install Base Implementation Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Order Management

To set instances to automatically expire (based on past due end dates), complete the following steps. It's a good idea to run this program at least once a day.

1. Log on to Oracle Applications in the forms mode as the Oracle Install Base Administrator.

2. From the Navigator menu, choose Others > Requests to display the Submit a New Request window.

3. Select Single Request, and click OK. The Install Base Requests window appears.

4. From the Name list of values, select Expire End Dated Instances, and click OK.

5. In the At These Times region, click Schedule to display the Schedule window.

6. Select the running schedule, and click OK. The Install Base Requests window appears.

7. Click Submit.

6

Category 6 — Before Using Product Features

This chapter describes Category 6 steps — you can use the Oracle Applications products, but you cannot use certain features until you complete the appropriate steps. The feature(s) affected are listed in the summary lines following each step.

All Products

Product-specific implementation or setup steps are an integral part of the upgrade. These steps may be needed to "turn on" new functionality added during the upgrade process or set up new product features.

Implementation and Setup Tasks

Complete all implementation and setup steps to ensure the success of your system upgrade.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Review product-specific documentation	Required	Application Specialists

Step 1 Review product-specific documentation
This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Product-specific user's guides
Do before using?	All Oracle products

Before you begin the Category 6 steps, review the product-specific documentation for the products you have installed to see if there are any implementation or setup steps that must be performed to "turn on" or implement new features of products that were added during the upgrade process.

1. Determine which products you have installed.

2. Make sure you have the product documentation for each product.

3. Review the implementation and/or setup information in the product guides.

4. Perform the steps that are appropriate for your system.

Applications Technology

All users must complete this portion of the upgrade. Complete these tasks *before* you perform the product-specific tasks.

System Administration Tasks

Complete the following System Administration tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Review user responsibility assignments	Recommended	System Administrator

Step 1 Review user responsibility assignments

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*
Do before using?	Reports

Although user/responsibility assignments are preserved during the upgrade, the effective permissions granted by the seeded responsibilities, menus, functions, and report security groups may have changed. Use the information on the Forms or Security reports in the System Administrator responsibility to confirm that permissions granted by responsibilities continue to meet the requirements of the job roles (without granting more privileges than are necessary.)

> **Additional Information:**   See Organizing Programs into Request Groups in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*.

Application Object Library Tasks

Complete the following Application Object Library tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Update custom code using flexfield values in FND_ LOOKUPS	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist

Task List		Status	Responsibility
2.	Update custom calls to FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXTS_TL	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
3.	Rename the srw directory	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
4.	Copy custom forms libraries to AU_TOP	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
5.	Copy custom .fmb files to AU_TOP	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
6.	Convert messages for custom applications	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
7.	Regenerate, recompile, and re-link custom concurrent program libraries	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Update custom code using flexfield values in FND_LOOKUPS

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Custom Flexfields-related code

During the upgrade, lowercase flexfield-related lookup codes in FND_LOOKUPS (and in the related flexfields columns in AOL tables) are replaced with new uppercase codes. If you have customizations that use these lookup codes (from FND_LOOKUPS or from the flexfield tables directly), change the customizations to use these new values.

The following table shows the LOOKUP_TYPE used in FND_LOOKUPS, the corresponding flexfields table and columns that use the changed value, the old lookup value used in FND_LOOKUPS and the flexfield table, and the new value. Evaluate the custom code (scripts, APIs, reports, and so on) to assess whether it uses these values. Modify the code accordingly.

Lookup Type	Table Name	Column	Old Value	New Value
FLEX_VALIDATION_EVENTS	FND_FLEX_VALIDATION_EVENTS	EVENT_CODE	e	O
FIELD_TYPE	FND_FLEX_VALUE_SETS	FORMAT_TYPE	t	I
FLEX_DEFAULT_TYPE	FND_ID_FLEX_SEGMENTS	DEFAULT_TYPE	s	A
FLEX_DEFAULT_TYPE	FND_DESCR_FLEX_COLUMN_USAGES	DEFAULT_TYPE	s	A

Step 2 Update custom calls to FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXTS_TL

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual*
Do before using?	Custom flexfields-related code

Oracle Applications added the DESCRIPTIVE_FLEX_CONTEXT_NAME column to the FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXTS_TL table to aid in the translation of context field values for descriptive flexfields. AutoUpgrade populates this column based on the codes in FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXTS. Modify any custom code (scripts, APIs, reports, and so on) that accesses FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXTS_TL or FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXTS to account for this new column and its values.

Step 3 Rename the srw directory

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Custom applications

To accommodate the new report products used in Oracle Applications, change the name of the *srw* directory to *reports* for each custom application.

Step 4 Copy custom forms libraries to AU_TOP

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Custom applications

Copy custom forms libraries (.pll) to the resource directory under AU_TOP. Complete this step before regenerating custom forms.

Step 5 Copy custom .fmb files to AU_TOP

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Custom applications

Put copies of custom .fmb files in the $AU_TOP/forms/<language> (UNIX) or %AU_TOP%\forms\<language> (Windows). Keep the original copies of the forms $COMMON_TOP/forms/<language> (UNIX) or %COMMON_TOP%\forms\<language> (Windows) in a safe place.

Step 6 Convert messages for custom applications

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 character-mode** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Custom applications

If you defined custom Message Dictionary messages using a custom application name in the character-mode Define Messages form (because character-mode custom applications use Message Dictionary), convert them to GUI format to continue using messages.

The FNDMDCVT program copies all of the messages for the application in the FND_MESSAGES table, concatenates the extended message text on the message text, and removes the special formatting codes in the old messages to produce plain text. It then inserts the new messages into the FND_NEW_MESSAGES table. If a message with that name, language, and application already exists in the FND_NEW_MESSAGES

table, the insert fails and the previously existing row is left alone. Only U.S. language messages are transferred by this converter.

To convert messages, follow these steps, where <APPL_SHORT_NAME> is the application short name for which you want messages converted. Run this script once for each custom application.

1. Make sure that FND_TOP/bin is in your PATH, and run FNDMDCVT from the command prompt:

   ```
   FNDMDCVT <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <APPL_SHORT_NAME>
   ```

2. From the Application Developer responsibility, navigate to Application > Messages. Query the messages for the application and verify that they were converted successfully. Adjust special formatting, as necessary. For example, delete old formatting text that was incorrectly entered.

3. To generate the Message Dictionary runtime message file, run FNDMDGEN for each custom application, where LANG_SHORT_NAME is the language short name (such as US) and APPL_SHORT_NAME is the application short name for which you want the message file generated:

   ```
   FNDMDGEN <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <LANG_SHORT_NAME> \
     <APPL_SHORT_NAME> DB_TO_RUNTIME
   ```

Step 7 Regenerate, recompile, and re-link custom concurrent program libraries
This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*
Do before using?	Custom concurrent program libraries

To accommodate the new form of concurrent program libraries, regenerate, recompile, and re-link the customized concurrent program libraries.

1. From the Application Developer responsibility, navigate to the Concurrent Program Libraries form (Concurrent > Library).

2. Query the custom library and press Generate.

   This submits a concurrent request that creates a file named <libraryname>.c in the lib directory under the application product tree to which the program library belongs. For example, library CUSTLIBR, a custom program (CUSTLIBR.c) registered under application Custom Application with a basepath XXCST_TOP, is generated in the lib directory under XXCST_TOP.

3. Compile the file using $FND_TOP/usrxit/Makefile (UNIX) or %FND_TOP%\usrxit\Makefile (Windows) and relink using adrelink.

4. Place the executable in the /bin directory for the appropriate product.

   > **Additional Information:**   See Concurrent Programs in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Maintenance*. See also *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Oracle Alert Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Alert tasks.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Associate organization names with custom Alert definitions	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
2.	Re-create event alert triggers in custom schemas	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator

Step 1 Associate organization names with custom Alert definitions

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Alert User's Guide*
Do before using?	Alert definitions

Manually update custom alerts that you want to assign to a particular organization:

1. As the Alerts Manager, navigate to the Alerts form (Alert > Define) and query the definition.

2. Choose Alert Details, then display the Installations tabbed region in the Alert Details window.

3. Enter the ORACLE ID and organization name that you want to run this alert against.

4. Make sure you check Enabled before you save your changes.

Step 2 Re-create event alert triggers in custom schemas

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Custom Alerts

Re-create custom alerts dropped in Step 1 of the Oracle Alert Tasks in Chapter 3.

Financial

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Financial products you have installed.

Oracle Cash Management Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Cash Management tasks.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Reinstall custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist

Step 1 Reinstall custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Financials Open Interface Reference, Oracle Cash Management User's Guide*
Do before using?	Reconciliation Open Interface

Requirement	Explanation
TUMS Step Key?	CE_999_RESTORE

Perform this step only if you have implemented and customized the Reconciliation Open Interface.

In Step 1 of the Oracle Cash Management Tasks in Chapter 1, you backed up the customized copies of CE_999_INTERFACE_V (view), and CE_999_PKG (package). Reinstall these customized copies to the database in the APPS account.

Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Complete the following Oracle General Ledger tasks.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Preserve GL account combinations affected by the Segment Value Inheritance program	Required	Application Specialist (GL)
2.	Ensure that account segment values use correct account type	Conditionally Required	Technical Specialist
3.	Review period rates	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator/ Application Specialist (GL)
4.	Review AutoPost criteria	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (GL)
5.	Define GIS conversion rates and rate types	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (GL)
6.	Verify program submission parameters for Mass Funds Check/Reservation	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (GL)
7.	Set function security for journal posting and reversing functions	Recommended	System Administrator/ Application Specialist (GL)
8.	Set up Intercompany Balancing	Recommended	Application Specialist (GL)

Step 1 Preserve GL account combinations affected by the Segment Value Inheritance program

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Do before using?	Segment Value Inheritance program
TUMS Step Key?	GL_PRESERVE_ACC_COMBINATIONS

You can automatically replicate any changes you make to segment value attributes (Detailed Posting, Detailed Budgeting, Effective Date Ranges, and the Enabled flag) to all account combinations that contain that segment value by running the Segment Value Inheritance program. For example, if you disable a particular cost center in the chart of accounts, you can also require that all account combinations that contain that cost center be automatically disabled.

To protect specific account combinations from being affected by this program:

1. In the GL Accounts window (Setup > Accounts > Combinations), find the account combinations you want to preserve.

2. Select the Preserved check box for all combinations that you want to save and save your work.

Step 2 Ensure that account segment values use correct account type

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Do before using?	Summary Accounts, Financial Analyzer Integration
TUMS Step Key?	GL_REVIEW_ACC_TYPES

> **Note:** This step is *required* if you use summary accounts in General Ledger *and* use Oracle Financial Analyzer to analyze GL account information. This step is *highly recommended* if you use summary accounts but not Financial Analyzer.

In Release 10.7, the natural account type for summary accounts was automatically set to Owners' Equity. Now, summary accounts inherit the account type of their account segment value. You must ensure that all the account segment values—even parent values—have the correct account type. Otherwise, summary accounts will be incorrectly classified.

For example, if you define a parent account value (1999) — the total of all asset accounts — set the account type for the parent segment value 1999 to Asset. When you subsequently define a summary account using this segment value, the summary account is correctly defined as an asset.

> **Note:** If the parent segment value is T, account type is not meaningful and does not need to be changed. If you use dependent account segments and have difficulty completing this step, contact Oracle Support Services.

Correctly setting the account type for account segment values ensures that the summary balances are displayed correctly if you choose to perform additional analysis using Oracle Financial Analyzer. To ensure that account segment values use the correct account type, complete the following steps.

1. In the Key Flexfields Segments window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Key > Segments), unfreeze all account structures that reference the account segment.

2. In the Value Sets window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Validation Sets), query the value set Name for the natural account segment. Optionally, query the segment values that you use for summary accounts. When you have entered the query values, choose Find. The Segment Values window appears.

3. Choose Hierarchy, Qualifiers from the pop list.

4. For each account segment value you use in the summary accounts, open the Segment Qualifiers window and review the setting for Account Type.

5. Change the account types and save your work.

6. Use the Key Flexfields Segments window to refreeze all account structures that reference the account segment.

7. Propagate the changes you made to Oracle General Ledger:

   UNIX:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gluacsum.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gluacsum.sql
```

Step 3 Review period rates

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Do before using?	Period Rates
TUMS Step Key?	GL_REVIEW_PERIOD_RATES

> **Note:** Do not perform this step if you have applied the minipacks for Release 11.02 or 11.03.

Run the Maintain Euro Period Rates program for each set of books that satisfies *both* of the following criteria:

- The set of book's functional currency is the euro or a currency participating in the Economic and Monetary Union, or period rates have been entered between the set of book's functional currency and the euro.

- The period containing January 1, 1999 is open or can be entered in the future for that set of books, or the budget year containing January 1, 1999 is open for a budget in that set of books.

From the General Ledger responsibility for a specific set of books:

1. Navigate to Reports > Request > Standard.

2. Choose to submit a single request.

3. Select Program - Maintain Euro Period Rates and click Submit.

Step 4 Review AutoPost criteria

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Do before using?	AutoPost
TUMS Step Key?	GL_REVIEW_AUTOPOST_CRITERIA

You use AutoPost criteria to automatically post journal batches that have specific combinations of journal source, period, and account type. In previous releases, you defined only one set of criteria for AutoPost, and you had to redefine it in order to change the priorities of the set of components.

If you used AutoPost and defined criteria in Release 10.7, you can now define multiple AutoPost criteria per set of books, and then schedule AutoPost to run at different times and submission intervals for each criteria set you have defined.

During the upgrade, the AutoPost criteria you have defined are grouped in a criteria set (called Standard) for each set of books. Review this criteria, and then submit and schedule the AutoPost runs using the Submit Request window. Provide the Criteria Set name as a run parameter.

> **Additional Information:** See Posting Journal Batches Automatically in *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*.

Step 5 Define GIS conversion rates and rate types

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Do before using?	Global Intercompany System (GIS)
TUMS Step Key?	GL_DEFINE_GIS_RATES

In earlier releases, GIS subsidiaries could use either period rates or daily rates when transferring foreign currency journals. Now, GIS subsidiaries use only daily rates. Therefore, you must specify conversion rate types and daily conversion rates for each of the subsidiaries.

To define conversion rate types:

1. In the Conversion Rate Types window (Setup > Currencies > Rates > Types), enter a Name and Description for the new conversion rate type.

2. Save your work.

To define conversion rates:

1. In the Daily Rates window (Setup > Currencies > Rates > Daily), enter the From Currency — the currency you want to convert from using the rates you enter. General Ledger automatically displays the functional currency for the set of books as the To Currency — the currency you want to convert to.

2. Enter the Conversion Date and Type.

3. Enter the conversion rate and save your work.

> **Note:** Set the profile option Daily Rates Window: Enforce Inverse Relationship During Entry to Yes to have the rates displayed in both columns to show the inverse relationship.

Step 6 Verify program submission parameters for Mass Funds Check/Reservation

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Do before using?	Mass Funds Check/Reservation program
TUMS Step Key?	GL_VERIFY_MASS_FUNDS_SUBMISSION

Perform this step if you previously used Mass Approvals (renamed Mass Funds Check/Reservation in Release 11*i*) in Release 10.7.

Use the Mass Funds Check/Reservation program to check or reserve funds for unposted journal batches. In Release 10.7, GL used the Automatic Posting options to prioritize the funds check and reservation. You must now specify the AutoPost criteria set as a parameter when you run Mass Funds Check/Reservation. If you have used Standard Request Submission to set the program to run at specific intervals, cancel this setting and create a new one. Enter new program parameters and specify an appropriate AutoPost criteria set.

> **Additional Information:** See Running the Mass Funds Check/Reservation Program in *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*.

Step 7 Set function security for journal posting and reversing functions

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Do before using?	Enter Journals
TUMS Step Key?	GL_SET_FUNCTION_SECURITY

In Release 10.7, function security for journal posting in the Enter Journals and Encumbrances windows was enabled with the profile option Journals: Allow Posting During Journal Entry.

Use the Oracle Applications standard Function Security features in System Administration to restrict user access to journal posting and reversing functions. If you do not specifically exclude them from selected responsibilities, all users have access to Enter Journals: Post and Enter Journals: Reverse.

> **Additional Information:** See Overview of Function Security in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*.

Step 8 Set up Intercompany Balancing

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*
Do before using?	Intercompany Balancing
TUMS Step Key?	GL_SETUP_INTERCOMPANY_BALANCING

If you have previously designed your account structure with an additional segment that uses the Balancing Segment value set, you have a one-time opportunity to assign the Intercompany segment qualifier to this segment.

For additional information, see: Accounting for Multiple Companies Using a Single Set of Books, Setting Up General Ledger > Designing Your Accounting Flexfield, Setting Up General Ledger > Defining Intercompany Accounts, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide*.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Payables tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Set up Offset taxes	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Set up the future-dated payment account	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Set up recoverable taxes	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Payables)
4. Link GL records and AP records	Required	Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1 Set up Offset taxes

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Tax Codes (*Oracle Payables User's Guide*)
Do before using?	Oracle Payables Offset Taxes
TUMS Step Key?	AP_SETUP_OFFSET_TAXES

Perform this step only if the previous installation had default Offset taxes set at the supplier site. Offset taxes do not default to new distributions unless you perform this step.

The default Offset tax is now associated with a Sales or User-defined tax. AutoUpgrade automatically enabled the new Use Offset Taxes check box for supplier sites with a default Offset tax assigned. This means when you enter a tax code with an active associated Offset Tax code, Payables automatically creates an Offset tax distribution.

Run apofftax.sql to create the Offset Tax Code Upgrade report. It lists for each organization all combinations of defaults for tax code and Offset tax code that you have set at the supplier site level and each supplier site that uses a combination.

Review the report to determine where to assign active Offset taxes to active Tax Codes. You may need to duplicate and rename a tax code if it is paired with more than one Offset tax. For example, supplier site A has Tax1 and Offset Tax1 set as defaults, and supplier site B has Tax1 and Offset Tax2 set as defaults. Duplicate and rename Tax1 so you can assign Offset Tax2 to it, and then assign the new tax to supplier site B.

1. Create the Offset Tax Code Upgrade report:

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apofftax.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apofftax.sql
   ```

2. Review the report and identify any tax codes you need to duplicate and rename, or identify the Offset taxes you need to associate with tax codes.

3. Navigate to the Tax Codes window (Setup > Taxes > Tax Codes).

4. If you had Sales or User-defined tax codes associated with more than one Offset tax, duplicate and rename them.

5. Query each Sales or User-defined tax code that you want to associate with an Offset tax code.

6. In the Offset Tax field, enter an active Offset tax code and save your work.

7. Update supplier sites that had tax code defaults associated with more than one Offset tax. Navigate to each supplier site (Suppliers > Entry). Choose the Sites button). Change the default tax code to the duplicated and renamed tax code.

8. Save your work.

Step 2 Set up the future-dated payment account

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Future Dated Payments (*Oracle Payables User's Guide)*
Do before using?	Oracle Payables Future Dated Payments
TUMS Step Key?	AP_SETUP_FUTURE_DATED_PAYMENT_ACCT

Perform this step only if you want to use future-dated payments in Release 11*i*.

Payables added fields for the future-dated payment account in the Financials Options, Suppliers (only if you do not use Multi-org), Supplier Sites, and Bank Accounts windows. It also renamed the field in the Payment Documents window. Perform this step to populate the new future-dated payment account fields.

If you previously used future-dated payments, the upgrade performs these actions for each payment document:

- Defaults the account you had defined in the Cash Clearing field of the Payment Documents window to the Future Dated Payment (account) field in the Payment Documents window

- Sets the Future Date Use option to Allowed in the Payment Documents window

In the Payables Options window, specify whether you want to use the supplier site or payment document account when Payables accounts for Future Dated Payments. If no value is set, AutoUpgrade automatically sets this parameter to Payment Document.

To populate the new fields:

1. In the Financials Options window (Setup > Options > Financials), for each organization, enter a value for the Future Dated Payment (account) and save your work.

2. Run the following script to populate the Future Dated Payment account field for Suppliers, Supplier Sites, and Bank Accounts. The script updates all organizations. It prompts for a batch size for the commit cycle.

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apxfdp01.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apxfdp01.sql
   ```

3. Reset any values for Future Dated Payment account in the Supplies, Supplier Sites, Bank Accounts, and Payment Document windows and save your work. See *Oracle Payables User's Guide* for more information.

Step 3 Set up recoverable taxes

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Financials Options, Recoverable Tax (*Oracle Payables User's Guide*)
Do before using?	Recoverable Tax (in either Payables or Purchasing)
TUMS Step Key?	AP_SETUP_RECOVERABLE_TAXES

This step is necessary *only* for those operating units where you have set the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option to Yes (Step 3 of Oracle Payables Tasks in Chapter 2). Refer to *Oracle Payables User's Guide* for details, but at a minimum, do the following.

1. Navigate to the Financials Options window (Setup > Options > Financials). In the Tax tabbed region, enter a value in the Default Recovery Rate field. For example, if you want taxes to be 100% recoverable, enter 100. You can override this value when you set up the tax codes.

2. To set up or review tax code recovery rate, navigate to the Tax Codes window (Setup > Tax > Codes). Review the recovery rate of each tax code and ensure that it is set correctly. For example, if you want a tax to be 100% recoverable, set the recovery rate to 100. If you want a tax to be non-recoverable (such as for U.S. state and local taxes), set the recovery rate to 0.

3. Save your work.

Step 4 Link GL records and AP records

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	Accounting (*Oracle Payables User's Guide*)
Do before using?	Drill down functionality from GL to Payables
TUMS Step Key?	AP_LINK_TO_GL

When GL records and AP records are linked, you can drill down from GL journals to the applicable invoice or payment document through the corresponding subledger accounting entries in Payables.

To link the records, run apallink.sql. The script takes two parameters: Start Date and End Date. It updates all accounting entry lines for invoices and checks in that date range. You can run it multiple times, for example, in small date ranges to manage system resources. We recommend you begin with the most recent data and work backwards until the entire pre-Release 11*i* date range has been updated. You cannot drill down between updated records and non-updated records. But, having non-updated records does not affect other functions, such as data entry. Enter dates as DD/MM/YYYY.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apallink.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apallink.sql
```

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Receivables tasks.

Task List		Status	Responsibility
1.	Define GL tax assignments for Natural Account tax codes	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Receivables)
2.	Link GL and AR records and set Gain, Loss, and Round accounting entries code combinations	Required	Application Specialist (Receivables)

Step 1 Define GL tax assignments for Natural Account tax codes

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*
Do before using?	AutoInvoice or Transactions window
TUMS Step Key?	AR_DEFINE_GL_TAX_ASSIGN_FOR_NATURAL

To use the Account Method for Value Added Tax (VAT) compliance, set up Receivables to use the tax code assigned to the Natural Account segment of the Revenue account when you manually enter transactions or import them using AutoInvoice.

> **Additional Information:**   See Controlling Tax from your Revenue Account and Implementing Value Added Tax in *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*.

> **Note:**   Do not perform this step if you have already completed it as part of the Oracle Payables or Oracle General Ledger upgrade. *If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for each organization*.

Step 2 Link GL and AR records and set Gain, Loss, and Round accounting entries code combinations

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Receivables User's Guide*
Do before using?	Drill down functionality from GL to Receivables
TUMS Step Key?	AR_LINK_TO_GL

When GL records and Receivables records are linked, you can drill down from GL journals to the applicable invoice or payment document through the corresponding subledger accounting entries in Receivables. You can also drill down from GL journal Gain, Loss, and Round accounting entries to the subledger.

To link GL and Receivables records and set the code combinations of the Gain, Loss, and Round accounting entries to match the code combinations in the GL journal, use the following scripts:

- argicind.sql. Creates an index on the gl_import_references table that enhances the performance of ar115gic.sql. It may take a long time to run, depending on the volume of data in gl_import_references.

- ar115gic.sql. Takes one parameter, number of Bulk_fetch_rows. It then fetches and updates that number of rows at one time. A commit is issued once for every bulk fetch, so set the rollback segment size accordingly. You can run this script multiple times if necessary.

> **Note:** Enter the fetch size according to the volume of the AR data in the gl_import_references table. If you leave this parameter blank, the default is 10,000.

- argidind.sql. Drops the index created by argicind.sql.

To complete this step, run the following scripts in the order listed:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argicind.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115gic.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argidind.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argicind.sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115gic.sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argidind.sql
```

Oracle iPayment Tasks

Perform the following Oracle iPayment tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Upgrade iPayment 3i transaction data	Required	System Administrator/Applications Specialist (iPayment)

Step 1 Upgrade iPayment 3i transaction data

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 3i** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference Manual?	No
Do before using?	Charging credit cards
Users must log off?	No

To upgrade transactions from the Release 3i schema to the Release 11i schema, run ibyupgrd.sql, where <db_link_to_3i> identifies the iPayment 3i schema (such as ps_master) and <log_file_pathname> is the path of the file that log messages are written to.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $IBY_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ibyupgrd.sql <db_link_to_3i>
```

Windows:

```
C:>\ cd %IBY_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:>\ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ibyupgrd.sql <db_link_to_3i>
```

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific tasks.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Enter uniform numbers for your company	Required	Taiwan/Product Manager
2. Enter GST registration information	Required	Singapore/Product Manager
3. Update tax types	Recommended	Singapore/System Administrator, Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)
4. Modify existing globalization flexfields in Payables	Required	Thailand/Application Specialist (Thai Payables and Receivables)
5. Update Thai Payables tax codes	Required	Thailand/Application Specialist (Thai Payables)
6. Update Thai Payables globalization flexfield attributes	Required	Thailand/Database Administrator
7. Modify the attribute set for the Thai Output Tax Summary report	Recommended	Thailand/Application Specialist (Thai Receivables)

Step 1 Enter uniform numbers for your company

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Taiwan)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*
Do before using?	Government uniform invoice
TUMS Step Key?	JA_ENTER_UNIFORM_NUMBERS_TAIWAN

In Step 4 of the Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks in Chapter 2, you recorded uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) for your company. Enter these numbers in the Taxpayer ID field in the Locations window (Human Resources) as part of defining additional company information.

> **Additional Information:** See Additional Company Information in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

Step 2 Enter GST registration information

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades **(Singapore)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*
Do before using?	GST Reporting
TUMS Step Key?	JA_ENTER_GST_REG_INFO_SINGAPORE

To enter GST registration information, first use the Locations window to enter additional information for a location, then define the location as a legal entity and enter the GST registration number in the Organization window. To complete this step, from the Singaporean AR responsibility, navigate to Setup > System > Organizations/Locations.

> **Additional Information:** See Additional Company Information in *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*.

Step 3 Update tax types

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades **(Singapore)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Payables User's Guide; Oracle Receivables User's Guide*
Do before using?	GST Reporting
TUMS Step Key?	JA_UPDATE_TAX_TYPES

To see historic transactions in the Singaporean GST F5 report, update the tax types for the historical transactions. Then, set up new tax types that correspond to the historical tax categories in the Payables and Receivables Lookups window and update the tax types associated with these transactions.

1. Run jasgupg1.sql to check the tax categories/tax types used in Singapore Payables and Receivables for all organizations.

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
   ```

   Review the jasgupg1.lst output file (in the current working directory). If no rows are listed, no further action is required.

2. In the Payables Lookups (Singaporean Payables > Oracle Payables > Setup > Lookups > Payables) and Receivables Lookups (Singaporean AR > Setup > System > QuickCodes > Receivables) windows, define new tax types that correspond to the tax categories associated with tax codes in Release 11.

   The Singaporean GST F5 report prefixes Payables tax types with the tax class associated with the tax code. Tax classes are new, and can be either input or output. The report lists transactions grouped by tax class and tax type. Do not include INPUT or OUTPUT in the lookup codes that you define for the new tax types. For example, if you had the tax category INPUT-STANDARD in Release 11, define the corresponding Payables tax type in Release 11*i* with the lookup code STANDARD.

   > **Additional Information:** See Lookups in *Oracle Payables User's Guide*. See also Defining Receivables Lookups in *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*.

3. Run jasgupg2.sql to update tax type fields in both Payables and Receivables Tax Codes windows for the tax codes that were associated with the tax category value in the globalization flexfield. This script updates all tax categories.

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg2.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg2.sql
   ```

At the prompt, specify the new tax type for each tax category. The script does not update the tax type if you do not specify a value for the tax type parameter. Enter a value, or leave blank and press Return.

For example:

```
Updating Tax Category INPUT-STANDARD
Tax Type:
```

If you enter STANDARD for the Tax Type, the script checks if the tax type STANDARD is defined as a lookup code for the lookup type Tax Type in the Payables Lookups window. It updates the tax type field with the new tax type for all records that were saved with tax category INPUT-STANDARD.

4. Run jasgupg1.sql to list the tax categories/tax types after the update:

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
   ```

   Windows:

   ```
   C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
   C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
   ```

Step 4 Modify existing globalization flexfields in Payables

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Thailand)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide*
Do before using?	Thai Input Tax Summary Report, Thai Output Tax Summary Report
TUMS Step Key?	JA_MODIFY_AP_GDF

Download and apply patch 1561962 to modify the existing globalization flexfields in Payables. It is available on Oracle*MetaLink*.

Step 5 Update Thai Payables tax codes

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Thailand)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide*
Do before using?	Thai Input Tax Summary Report
TUMS Step Key?	JA_UPDATE_THAI_AP_TAX_CODES

You can use a globalization flexfield in the Tax Codes window to indicate when you want Payables to add tax invoice information to a transaction. If you want to enter tax information when you enter invoices, select Invoices from the list of values. If you want to enter tax information when you enter payments, select Payments. Update this globalization flexfield for every VAT tax code in the old system.

To update tax codes, query the existing tax codes and complete the steps in Setting Up Payables for the Thai VAT in the *Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide*.

Step 6 Update Thai Payables globalization flexfield attributes

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Thailand)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide; Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*
Do before using?	Thai Input Tax Summary Report
TUMS Step Key?	JA_UPDATE_THAI_AP_GDF

Globalization flexfield attributes that contain tax invoice information have been changed. Run jathpupg.sql to update these attributes.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jathpupg.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd $JA_TOP/patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jathpupg.sql
```

Step 7 Modify the attribute set for the Thai Output Tax Summary report

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Thailand)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide, Oracle Financials RXi Reports Administration Tool User's Guide*
Do before using?	Thai Output Tax Summary Report
TUMS Step Key?	JA_MODIFY_THAI_OUTPUT_TAX_SUM_ATTR_SET

To print historical data with the Thai Output Tax Summary report, create a new attribute set and run the report using this new set.

To create a new attribute set:

1. In the Report eXchange Designer responsibility, create a new attribute set for the RX-only: Thai Output Tax Summary Report as described in the *Oracle Financials RXi Reports Administration Tool User Guide*.

2. In the Register Columns window, select the Include in Attribute Set check box for GDF_RA_CUST_TRX_ATT2 (Tax Invoice Date in previous release) and for GDF_RA_CUST_TRX_ATT3 (Tax Invoice in previous release).

3. Click OK.

4. Navigate to the Displayed Columns tabbed region in the Attribute Set window and move GDF_RA_CUST_TRX_ATT2 and GDF_RA_CUST_TRX_ATT3 from the Available window to the Displayed window.

5. Navigate to the Column Details window and modify the report column header name in the Attribute Name column for these two attributes.

To run a report with the new attribute set:

1. In the System Administrator responsibility, navigate to the Concurrent Programs window.

> **2.** Query the Thai Output Tax Summary Report.
>
> **3.** Select the Parameters button. The Concurrent Program Parameters window appears.
>
> **4.** Select the Display check box to display the new attribute set. Save your work.

Oracle Financials Common Country Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Financials Common Country tasks.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Set up Appreciation QuickCode	Recommended	Austria, Germany, Switzerland/Database Administrator, Application Specialist
2. Upgrade Appreciation transactions	Recommended	Austria, Germany, Switzerland/Database Administrator, Application Specialist
3. Assign request groups to responsibilities	Recommended	Oracle Financials Users in Japan/System Administrator

Step 1 Set up Appreciation QuickCode

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Austria, Germany, and Switzerland)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Assets User's Guide*
Do before using?	DACH Asset Summary report or DACH Depreciation Analysis report
TUMS Step Key?	JG_SETUP_APPR_QUICKCODE

The DACH Asset Summary report and DACH Depreciation Analysis report display appreciation separately from other types of unplanned depreciation. To distinguish between appreciation amounts when you run these reports, use the APPREC QuickCode for the unplanned depreciation type.

From the Oracle Assets responsibility use the QuickCodes window (Setup > Asset System > QuickCodes) to maintain unplanned depreciation types. Query the TYPE FOR UNPLANNED DEPRECIATION QuickCode type and specify APPREC in the Value field to set up a new unplanned depreciation type for appreciation transactions. Disable any other unplanned depreciation types that were previously used to record appreciation.

Step 2 Upgrade Appreciation transactions

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Austria, Germany, and Switzerland)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Assets User's Guide*
Do before using?	DACH Asset Summary report or DACH Depreciation Analysis report
TUMS Step Key?	JG_UPGRADE_APPR_TRX

Appreciation transactions that were previously entered using a different unplanned depreciation type are not shown correctly in the DACH Asset Summary report or the DACH Depreciation Analysis report. Run the jgzzfaap.sql script to specify the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used.

After you run the script, use the APPREC QuickCode only as the unplanned depreciation type for appreciation transactions. Manually disable the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used for appreciations.

Run jgzzfaap.sql, where <type> is the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used. Consult an Oracle Assets user to see which unplanned depreciation type, if any, was previously used to record appreciation transactions.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $JG_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzfaap.sql <type>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %JG_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzfaap.sql <type>
```

From the Oracle Assets responsibility, maintain unplanned depreciation types in the QuickCodes window (Setup > Asset System > QuickCodes). To see possible values for unplanned depreciation types, query the TYPE FOR UNPLANNED DEPRECIATION QuickCode type.

For example, run this script to convert transactions with the OLDTYPE unplanned depreciation type to the APPREC QuickCode. The script updates the TRANSACTION_SUBTYPE column in FA_TRANSACTION_HEADERS:

```
$ sqlplus scott/tiger @jgzzfaap.sql OLDTYPE
```

> **Additional Information:** See Unplanned Depreciation in *Oracle Assets User's Guide*.

Step 3 Assign request groups to responsibilities

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Japan)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*
Do before using?	Reports
TUMS Step Key?	JG_ASSIGN_REQUEST_GROUPS

Assign new request groups to the responsibilities to access these reports. Perform this step in the Standard Request Submission window from the System Administrator responsibility (Security > Responsibility > Define).

Name	Name
Customer Balances Detail	Customer Balances Detail (180)
Customer Balances Summary	Customer Account Balance Detail
Customer Account Balance Detail (180)	Publish Tax Reconciliation by Taxable Account
Supplier Balances Detail	Supplier Balances Detail (180)
Supplier Balances Summary	Supplier Account Balance Detail
Supplier Account Balance Detail (180)	Subledger Balance Maintenance for Payables Accounting Periods

Name	Name
Subledger Balance Maintenance for Receivables Accounting Periods	

Assign this request group...	To the...
JGJP + AP Reports	Payables responsibilities
JGJP + AR Reports	Receivables responsibilities
JGJP + GL Reports	General Ledger responsibilities

In the Responsibilities window, navigate to the Request Group region. Use the list of values in the Name field to assign request groups to the responsibilities.

Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Financials for Europe tasks.

	Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1.	Update Polish and Turkish journal line sequence numbers	Conditionally Required	Poland, Turkey/Database Administrator
2.	Update Danish EFT invoices to use EDI flexfield	Conditionally Required	Denmark/Applications Specialist (Financials for Denmark
3.	Update taxable amounts for custom bills and self invoices	Required	Italy/Database Administrator, Applications Specialist
4.	Update Hungarian VAT transactions	Conditionally Required	Hungary/Database Administrator
5.	Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield	Conditionally Required	Hungary/System Administrator

Step 1 Update Polish and Turkish journal line sequence numbers

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades **(Poland and Turkey)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Poland User's Guide; Oracle Financials for Turkey User's Guide*
Do before using?	General Ledger for Poland or Turkey
TUMS Step Key?	JE_UPDATE_POLISH_TURK_SEQ_NUM

In Release 11, the journal line sequence numbers were stored in a descriptive flexfield (JG_ZZ_RECON_LINES) in the Journals window. In Release 11*i*, the journal line sequence numbers are stored in a globalization flexfield (JG_GL_JE_LINES_INFO) in the same window. Update the journal line sequence numbers to use the new flexfield:

1. As System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window (Profile > System) and set the JG: Territory and GL Set of Books ID profile options at responsibility level for the GL Localizations responsibility (Polish GL Localizations or Turkish GL Localizations). Set the JG: Territory profile option to *Poland* for Polish GL Localizations or to *Turkey* for Turkish GL Localizations. Set the GL Set of Books profile option to the appropriate set of books for the responsibility.

2. From the GL Localizations responsibility (Polish GL Localizations or Turkish GL Localizations), run the Journal Lines Global Descriptive Flexfield Synchronization program using the Standard Request Submission windows.

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, run the Journal Lines Global Descriptive Flexfield Synchronization program once for each set of books.

> **Additional Information:** See *Oracle Financials for Poland User's Guide*; *Oracle Financials for Turkey User's Guide*.

Step 2 Update Danish EFT invoices to use EDI flexfield

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Denmark)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Payables User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide*
Do before using?	Danish EDI
TUMS Step Key?	JE_UPDATE_DANISH_EFT_INVOICES

Oracle Financials for Denmark has replaced the Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) payment process with Electronic Data Interchange (EDI). Migrate the additional country-specific invoice information for the outstanding invoices from the old EFT flexfield to the new globalization flexfield for EDI.

1. Update additional invoice information for all open invoices with a payment method of Electronic.

   Oracle Payables for Denmark places a hold on any invoice with incomplete information. Before you migrate the invoice information, update the additional invoice information in the old EFT flexfields for all open invoices that you want to upgrade with a payment method of Electronic.

   > **Additional Information:** See Invoice EFT Information in *Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide*.

2. Create a new hold code for the data migration script.

   Create a new hold code for the data migration script to use when placing the holds. From the Invoice Approvals window (Danish AP > Setup > Invoice > Approvals), enter EFT_TO_EDI_DATA_MIGRATE in the Name field for the new hold code. In the Type field, select Invoice Hold Reason, and also Postable and Releaseable.

   > **Additional Information:** See Invoice Approvals in *Oracle Payables User's Guide*.

3. Migrate additional country-specific invoice information.

   UNIX:

   ```
   $ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedkediu.sql
   ```

   Windows:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedkediu.sql
```

4. Enter missing information for invoices placed on hold.

   Oracle Payables for Denmark places a hold on any invoice with incomplete information using the hold code you previously defined. Enter any missing information for these invoices. When the information is complete, manually release the holds and approve the invoices for payment.

   > **Additional Information:** See Entering Invoices in *Oracle Financials for Denmark*.

Step 3 Update taxable amounts for custom bills and self invoices

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Italy)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Oracle Payables Summary VAT Report, Italian Purchase VAT Report, Italian Payables Sales VAT Register (Self Invoice, EU VAT)
TUMS Step Key?	JE_UPDATE_TAXABLE_AMOUNTS_FOR_CUST_BILLS

Use the globalization flexfield in the Distributions window to record the taxable amounts for self invoices and custom bills. Self invoices and custom bills entered before the upgrade are not displayed on the Italian Payables Summary VAT Report, the Italian Purchase VAT Register, and the Italian Sales VAT Register (Self Invoice, EU VAT).

To ensure that the VAT reports correctly display these amounts, run jeitapid.sql. It updates invoice distributions that have a tax type of Custom Bill or Self Invoice by updating the GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE_CATEGORY and GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE1 at the invoice distribution level (on the AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS table).

UNIX:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitapid.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\patch\ll5\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitapid.sq
```

Enter the Set of Books ID for the Italian organization at the prompt. If you have multiple Italian organizations, run the script once for each organization.

> **Additional Information:** See *Oracle Financials for Italy User's Guide*.

Step 4 Update Hungarian VAT transactions

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Hungary)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	ECE Payables VAT Register or ECE Receivables VAT Register for Hungary
TUMS Step Key?	JE_UPDATE_HUNGARIAN_VAT

VAT transactions that were already reported on the final version of the now obsolete Hungarian Purchases VAT Register and Hungarian Sales VAT Register reports must be marked so that they can be excluded from the new ECE Payables VAT Register and ECE Receivables VAT Register reports for Hungary.

To mark the transactions to be excluded, run the following script for each Hungarian organization ID:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jehurvat.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jehurvat.sql
```

The script lists all organization IDs and names available in the database. When the system administrator enters the organization ID for Hungary, the script updates the transactions by inserting additional information in the global attribute columns on the AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS table for Payables transactions, or the RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES table for Receivables transactions. Update the VAT transactions marked by this script so that they are included the next time you run the reports.

> **Additional Information:**   See *Oracle Financials for Hungary User's Guide*.

Step 5 Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades **(Hungary)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Hungary User's Guide*
Do before using?	Hungarian Receivables Open Items Revaluation report
TUMS Step Key?	JE_ENABLE_HUNGARIAN_GDF

The Hungarian Receivables Open Items Revaluation report revalues all outstanding receivables accounts at a particular date, with regard to a stated reporting period, to reflect foreign exchange rate fluctuations since the original transaction date.

Not all transaction types of open items are revalued. You designate which transaction types are revalued in the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield on the Transaction Types window (Hungarian AR: Setup > Transactions > Transaction Types).

Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield by setting these profile options in the System Profile Values window (System Administrator: Profile > System):

Set this profile option...	To this value...
JG: Application	Oracle Receivables
JG: Product	European Localizations
JG: Territory	Hungary

Now, use the Revaluate Transaction Type field in this flexfield to manually designate which transaction types are revalued.

Oracle Financials for Latin America Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Latin America tasks.

Task List	Status	Country/Responsibility
1. Update Colombian journal line third-party information	Required	Colombia/Database Administrator, Application Specialist (GL)

Step 1 Update Colombian journal line third-party information

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades **(Colombia)**.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*
Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	JL_UPDATE_COLOMBIAN_JOURNAL_LINES

In Release 11, Oracle Financials for Colombia stores journal line third-party information in a descriptive flexfield (JG_ZZ_RECON_LINES) in the Journals window. In Release 11*i*, this information is stored in a globalization flexfield (JG_GL_JE_LINES_INFO) in the same window. Update the journal line third-party information to use the new flexfield:

1. As the System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window (Profile > System).

2. Set the JG: Territory and GL Set of Books ID profile options at responsibility level for the Colombian GL Localizations responsibility. Set the JG: Territory profile option to *Colombia*. Set the GL Set of Books profile option to the appropriate set of books for the responsibility.

3. From the Colombian GL responsibility, run the journal lines global descriptive flexfield synchronization program using the Standard Request Submission window (Colombian Localization > Other > Requests > Run).

> **Note:**   If you use multiple sets of books, run the journal lines global descriptive flexfield synchronization program once for each set of books using a different responsibility.

> **Additional Information:**   See Entering Journal Line Third Party Information in *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*.

Projects

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Projects products you have installed.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Projects tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Implement Self-Service Time	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Implement cross charge	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1 Implement Self-Service Time

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Self-Service Time Implementation/Migration Guide, Release 11i*
Do before using?	Oracle Self-Service Time

If you used Personal Time and Expense (PTE) or Project Time and Expense (to enter timecard information), you must implement Self-Service Time and roll it out to users. Refer to *Oracle Self-Service Time Implementation/Migration Guide Release 11i* on Oracle*MetaLink*.

Step 2 Implement cross charge

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Cross Charge
TUMS Step Key?	PA_IMPLEMENT_CROSS_CHARGE

Cross charging and Borrowed and Lent Accounting are no longer enabled by using profile options. If you cross-charged transactions across Operating Units or used the Borrowed and Lent Revenue function before the upgrade, follow the Cross Charge and Inter-Project Billing implementation instructions in the *Oracle Projects User's Guide* to continue using this function.

Human Resources

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Human Resources products you have installed.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Human Resources tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Recreate custom Salary Proposal view	Conditionally Required	System Administrator
2. Drop obsolete Oracle users	Recommended	Database Administrator

Step 1 Recreate custom Salary Proposal view

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No

Requirement	Explanation
Do before using?	Salary Administration
TUMS Step Key?	PER_RECREATE_SALARY_VIEW

You identified the custom location for the custom Salary proposals view script (PER_SALARY_PROPOSALS_HRV) in Step 3 of the Oracle Human Resources Tasks in Chapter 1. After the custom changes have been applied, rerun the script to recreate the customized view:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @peupl01v.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %PER_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @peupl01v.sql
```

Step 2 Drop obsolete Oracle users

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Restricted Security Profiles

Restricted security profiles may now be obsolete. In Release 11*i*, responsibilities that use restricted security profiles connect to the APPS Oracle user. You no longer have to maintain separate Oracle users for every restricted security profile. Release 10.7 reporting Oracle users are unaffected by this change.

To list Oracle users that were associated with restricted security profiles, run the following script, where <SID> is the value of $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK (UNIX) or the value of ORACLE_SID or LOCAL (Windows).

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PER_TOP/admin/sql/peoldsec.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PER_TOP%\admin\sql\peoldsec.sql
```

This script also indicates which Oracle users have been dropped from the database. The output is spooled to peoldsec.lis in the current working directory. If the Oracle users listed in peoldsec.lis do not contain the custom tables or views that you want to preserve, drop them — they are no longer used by Oracle HRMS.

Before dropping a user whose schema contains objects, thoroughly investigate these objects and the implications of dropping them. Pay attention to any cascading effects. For example, if the user owns a table, check whether any views or procedures depend on that table. For example:

UNIX:

```
$ sqlplus SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> DROP USER jones;
SQL> exit
```

Windows:

```
C:\> sqlplus SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> DROP USER jones;
SQL> exit
```

To drop a user and all its schema objects (if any), you must have the DROP USER system privilege (typically held by a security administrator). Use either the Drop menu item on the Enterprise Manager/GUI, or the SQL command DROP USER.

If the user's schema contains any schema objects, use the CASCADE option to drop the user and all associated objects and foreign keys that depend on the tables of the user. If you do not specify CASCADE and the user's schema contains objects, an error message is returned and the user is not dropped.

To verify that the users have been successfully dropped, rerun peoldsec.sql at any time prior to dropping PER_SECURITY_PROFILES_OLD.

> **Additional Information:** See *Oracle9i Database Administrator's Guide.*

Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Payroll (U.S.) tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Check for invalid U.S. address information	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator

Step 1 Check for invalid U.S. address information

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	A payroll or modifying existing employee tax information
TUMS Step Key?	PAY_CHECK_INVALID_ADDRESSES

The Global Legislation driver (hrglobal.drv) creates pyvaladr.lst, which lists existing U.S. addresses (locations or personal addresses) that are invalid. The file is located in $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (Windows). Review the file and correct invalid address data.

To correct location addresses:

In the Location window (Work Structures > Location), query the required location and amend the address as required and save your work.

To correct personal addresses:

In the People window (People > Enter and Maintain), query the person and choose the Address button. Amend the address as required and save your work.

After correcting data, regenerate the .lst file to verify that all addresses are valid. To regenerate the file, run the following script where <SID> is the value of $ORACLE_ SID or $TWO_TASK (UNIX) or the value of ORACLE_SID or LOCAL (Windows).

UNIX:
```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PAY_TOP/admin/sql/pyvaladr.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PAY_TOP%\admin\sql\pyvaladr.sql
```

Logistics

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Logistics products you have installed.

Oracle Inventory Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Inventory tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Create indexes on flexfield segment columns - INV	Required	N/A
2. Change Item Description profile option - INV	Recommended	System Administrator

Step 1 Create indexes on flexfield segment columns - INV

This task is **Required**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Indicated key flexfields

To improve performance of key flexfields, create indexes on the segment columns. We recommend creating these indexes for the following key flexfields:

Flexfield	Base Table
System Items	MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
Account Aliases	MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS
Stock Locators	MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS

1. To Determine whether a concatenated index exists for the flexfield segments:

UNIX:
```
$ cd $INV_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invflseg.sql
```

Windows:
```
C:\> cd %INV_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invflseg.sql
```

This script produces invidxch.lis, which has three sections: System Items, Account Aliases, and Stock Locators flexfields, with the corresponding MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B, MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS, and MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS code combination tables. Each section contains information about flexfield segments (segment number, segment name, and segment column name enabled) and table indexes (index name, name of the indexed column, and the position of the column in an index on a table).

2. If you determine that the concatenated index does not already exist, create a concatenated index on the MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B table. It must include all the segment columns enabled for the System Items flexfield, in the same order as the segments in the flexfield structure definition. For example, if you have segment3, segment4, segment6 (in this order) enabled for the flexfield, create as follows:

   UNIX:

```
$ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password>
SQL> create index MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_NS3
 2 on MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
 3 (segment3,
 4  segment4,
 5  segment6);
SQL> exit
```

   Windows:

```
C:\> sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password>
SQL> create index MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_NS3
 2 on MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
 3 (segment3,
 4  segment4,
 5  segment6);
SQL> exit
```

   Name the index using the format MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_NSX, where X is the first active segment column. In the example, the index name is MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_NS3. If the index already exists (as in the case of an upgrade from 10.7 or 11.0), its name may have a format MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_NX.

3. Repeat the previous steps to create indexes for MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS (use index name format MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS_NSX) and MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS (use index name format MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS_NSX).

Step 2 Change Item Description profile option - INV

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Items

You can build an item description (for items that have an assigned catalog group) by either concatenating the item catalog group *name* with the enabled descriptive element values, or by concatenating the item catalog group *description* with the enabled descriptive element values. The profile option INV:Use Catalog Name In the Item Description determines the method used. A value of *Yes* uses the catalog group name. *No* uses the catalog group description.

If your business logic mandates, during the upgrade (or at any other time), you can change this profile option.

1. As the System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window. Set this option at the site level.

    Additional Information: See Profile Options in Oracle Inventory in *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

2. If you change the profile option, update all existing descriptions for items that have an assigned catalog group:

    UNIX:

    ```
    $ cd $INV_TOP/admin/sql
    $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invicgds.sql
    ```

    Windows:

    ```
    C:\> cd %INV_TOP%\admin\sql
    C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invicgds.sql
    ```

    Additional Information: See Overview of Item Cataloging in *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*.

Public Sector

Review this section and complete *only* the tasks for the Oracle Public Sector products you have installed.

Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) Tasks

Complete the following Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) tasks.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Migrate gross-based VAT data	Conditionally Required	Application Specialist
2. Upgrade subledger security	Conditionally Required	Database Administrator/Application Specialist

Step 1 Migrate gross-based VAT data

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 12, 3.1, or 3.3** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Gross-based VAT data
TUMS Step Key?	IGI_MIGRATE_RECOV_VAT_TAX_DISTRIBUTIONS

If gross-based VAT was activated in the previous version, perform this step to migrate this data to the new Partially Reclaimable VAT tables.

1. Enable the recoverable tax option in Oracle Payables as described in Category 2, Step 3 of the Oracle Payables Tasks in Chapter 2.

2. Set up recoverable taxes in Oracle Payables as described in Step 3 of Oracle Payables Tasks in this chapter.

3. Set up the tax code default in Payables. Navigate to the Financials Options window (Setup > Options > Financials). In the Tax tabbed region, select an option from the list of values in the Default Tax Code field. Save your work.

4. Run the following script:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igigbvuw.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %IGI_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igigbvuw.sql
```

5. Migrate Recovery Rates (optional)

To migrate Recovery Rates under a single recovery rule named "11.0.3 Upgrade - Recovery Rule" for each organization, run the following script, which also migrates associated accounting information to the flexfield structure in 11*i*:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igigbvl.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %IGI_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igigbvl.sql
```

> **Note:** You should verify the accuracy of the migrated accounting information. AP setup upgrade must have been completed successfully before you run this script.

Step 2 Upgrade subledger security

This task is **Conditionally Required**. It applies to **Release 12, 3.1, or 3.3** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Do before using?	Subledger Security
Concurrent Manager?	Yes
TUMS Step Key?	IGI_UPGRADE_SLS_SETUPS

The following steps upgrade subledger and security setup data and setup steps. You must have completed all other upgrade steps before you perform this step.

> **Note:** Perform this step only if subledger security is already in use. Make sure the concurrent manager is running before you begin, and that users are logged off.

---

1. Upgrade subledger security by running the following script:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igiasls1.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %IGI_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igiasls1.sql
```

> **Note:** The script prompts you to disable *security groups/Secure userids*. If you select Y, the security groups and user IDs will be upgraded, and the associated secured data *prior to* disabling will be secured. If you select N, the security groups and user IDs will not be upgraded, and the associated data will not be secured.

2. Check the log file (igiasls1.log) for errors. If any errors are reported, do not proceed with this upgrade step and do not use subledger security until the errors are fixed.

3. Apply security and create subledger security objects:

   ▪ Log on to the application and choose the System Administrator responsibility.

   ▪ Choose OPSF (I) System Administration > Subledger Security > Apply Security.

   ▪ Select the CREATE parameter.

   ▪ Submit the request (check the log file for the submitted request).

     Additional Information: See Applying Security Procedure, Subledger Security Setup in the *Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) User's Guide*.

4. Verify that the subledger security structure is successfully upgraded by logging on as system administrator and reviewing the following.

   Subledger security groups:

   In the Maintain Groups window (OPSF(I) System Administration > Subledger Security > Maintain Groups), define, re-enable, or delete security groups as required. Save your work.

     Additional Information: See Maintaining Security Groups Procedure, Subledger Security Setup in *Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) User's Guide*.

   Subledger security secure tables:

   In the Maintain Tables window (OPSF(I) System Administration > Subledger Security > Maintain Tables), define, re-enable, or delete secure tables as required. Verify that all secure tables exist in the database and include the column JE_UK_ VIEW_COLUMN. Save your work.

     Additional Information: See Maintaining Secure Tables Procedure, Subledger Security Setup in *Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) User's Guide*.

   Subledger security allocations:

   In the Maintain Allocations window (OPSF(I) System Administration > Subledger Security > Maintain Allocations), allocate tables to or delete tables from security groups, disable, or re-enable tables as required. Save your work.

     Additional Information: See Maintaining Allocations Procedure, Subledger Security Setup in *Oracle Public Sector Financials (International) User's Guide*.

5. Upgrade subledger security data by running the following script:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igiasls2.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %IGI_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @igiasls2.sql
```

Review the output. If errors are reported, omit this security upgrade step and do not use the subledger security feature until you fix the errors.

7

Finishing the Upgrade

To finish the upgrade, you must perform some final tasks that affect Oracle Applications as a whole — you must perform them after all system and product-specific steps are complete. In addition, there are some optional tasks that may apply only to some systems. This chapter describes these tasks in the following sections:

> **Note:** Performing the tasks in this chapter out of order may reverse upgrade processes that you have previously completed.

System Maintenance Tasks

After you have verified the upgrade, you must perform certain "clean-up" tasks for all Applications products, not just those that are licensed installed or shared, since all database components are installed and upgraded together.

> **Note:** Before you perform these steps, back up the Oracle Applications product files and the database.

Task List	Status	Responsibility
1. Drop obsolete database objects	Recommended	Database Administrator
2. Drop MRC schema	Recommended	System Administrator
3. Delete obsolete product files	Recommended	System Administrator
4. Drop obsolete columns in Oracle Assets	Recommended	Database Administrator
5. Drop unnecessary indexes for Oracle Payables	Recommended	Database Administrator
6. Remove old subledger security schemas for Public Sector Financials	Recommended	Database Administrator
7. Install online help	Recommended	System Administrator

Step 1: Drop obsolete database objects

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Administrator's Guide*

Requirement	Explanation
Users must log off?	No

To help remove obsolete objects, we supply a SQL*Plus script for many products. The script is $<PROD_TOP>/admin/sql/<prod>dold.sql (UNIX) or %<PROD>_ TOP%\admin\sql\<prod>dold.sql> (Windows), where <PROD> (or <prod>) represent the product short name. For example, PO (Purchasing). Each script lists obsolete objects.

> **Caution:** Do not run <prod>dold.sql until you have verified that the upgrade is complete and successful.

Review a product script and determine if you want to drop the obsolete objects. If so, enter the following command, where <PROD_TOP> represents the appropriate product top environment variable. Pay special attention to instructions in the script for additional parameters.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $<PROD_TOP>/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<prod>dold.sql \
  <prod username> <prod password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %<PROD_TOP>%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<prod>dold.sql \
    <prod username> <prod password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

For example, to run the Purchasing script:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $PO_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @podold.sql \
  <PO username> <PO password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %PO_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @podold.sql \
    <PO username> <PO password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

This product...	...requires these parameters
Common Country Features (JG)	<GL username> <GL password> <JG username> <JG password> <AR username> <AR password> <FA username> <FA password>
Financials for EMEA (JE)	<AP username> <AP password>

Step 2: Drop MRC schema

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Administrator's Guide*
Users must log off?	No

Based on the changes to the MRC architecture, the MRC_APPS schema is no longer needed. All programs and reports that used APPS_MRC have been migrated to work from the APPS schema. Dropping the APPS_MRC schema frees space and reduces overhead during patch applications.

To drop this schema, run the following script as the SYSTEM user:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @addrpmrc.sql \
  <APPLSYS username> SAFE
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @addrpmrc.sql \
    <APPLSYS username> SAFE
```

Step 3: Delete obsolete product files

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security; Oracle Applications Concepts*
Users must log off?	No

Delete the product files for the previous release (if you have not done so already). You may want to retain report output files or customized programs. Output files are stored in the old log and output subdirectories under each product's top directory, under the log and output directories you created, or under a common directory. To remove obsolete files for an old release, change to the top directory of that release and enter the following command:

UNIX:

```
$ rm -rf <old APPL_TOP>
```

Here is an example:

```
$ rm -rf /d01/appl/r10
```

Windows:

```
C:\> del /s /q <old APPL_TOP>
```

Here is an example:

```
C:\> del /s /q \APPL110
```

> **Note:** If you are upgrading from 10.7SC, you can delete all obsolete client-side product files at this time.

Step 4: Drop obsolete columns in Oracle Assets

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle8i SQL Reference Manual*

Requirement	Explanation
Users must log off?	Yes

To conform to multilingual changes, a number of tables have been renamed to indicate they are base tables (_B) and their descriptive columns have been copied to a new table with the same base name, plus a _TL suffix to indicate they are translated tables. The descriptive columns in the base table are set to unused, so you cannot view them. To drop these obsolete columns, run the following script. It requires BATCHSIZE as a parameter.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $FA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <FA username>/<FA password> @facoldr.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %FA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <FA username>/<FA password> @facoldr.sql
```

Table name in prior release	Base table with dropped column	Translated with copied column	Column name to be dropped
FA_ADDITIONS	FA_ADDITIONS_B	FA_ADDITIONS_TL	description
FA_CATEGORIES	FA_CATEGORIES_B	FA_CATEGORIES_TL	description
FA_LOOKUPS	FA_LOOKUPS_B	FA_LOOKUPS_TL	description
FA_LOOKUPS	FA_LOOKUPS_B	FA_LOOKUPS_TL	meaning
FA_LOOKUP_TYPES	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_B	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_TL	description
FA_LOOKUP_TYPES	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_B	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_TL	meaning
FA_RX_ATTRSETS	FA_RX_ATTRSETS_B	FA_RX_ATTRSETS_TL	user_attribute_set
FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS	FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS_B	FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS_TL	attribute_name

To make sure the data in the column to be dropped has been copied correctly from the base table to the translated table, confirm that the number of rows in both tables is equal. You can do this by running a select count in SQL*Plus from the base table and the translated table.

Also, you can select the column name in the translated table of the column that will be dropped from the base table to make sure that there is data in that column. For example, the upgrade drops the Description column from the FA_ADDITIONS_B table. Select Description from FA_ADDITIONS_TL and confirm that the column has been correctly populated.

Step 5: Drop unnecessary indexes for Oracle Payables

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	*Oracle Payables User's Guide*
Do before using?	Oracle Applications

If all operating units use Accrual Basis Accounting, run the following script to drop the indexes on the CASH_POSTED_FLAG columns in AP_INVOICE_ DISTRIBUTIONS and AP_INVOICE_PAYMENTS.

> **Note:** Do *not* perform this step if 1) at least one of the operating units uses Combined Basis Accounting, or 2) if you have at least one operating unit that uses Cash Basis Accounting and at least one operating unit that uses Accrual Basis Accounting.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaccr.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaccr.sql
```

If all operating units use Cash Basis Accounting, run the following script to drop the indexes on the ACCRUAL_POSTED_FLAG columns in AP_INVOICE_ DISTRIBUTIONS and AP_INVOICE_PAYMENTS:

UNIX:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apcash.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apcash.sql
```

Step 6: Remove old subledger security schemas for Public Sector Financials

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 12, 3.1, 3.3** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

You must have already run igidold.sql (as described in Step 1 in this section) before you continue.

If you used subledger security in a previous version of Public Sector Financials (International), you should remove any additional secure schemas that were created. Running igidold.sql in Step 1 dynamically created a script to drop these additional schemas. If the script is empty, you can omit this step.

If there are additional schemas, run the following script to drop them. This is potentially a long-running process. It could take up to 2 hours to drop each listed user.

UNIX:

```
$ cd $IGI_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM uername>/<SYSTEM password> @igidropschema.sql
```

Windows:

```
C:\> cd $IGI_TOP\admin\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM uername>/<SYSTEM password> @igidropschema.sql
```

Step 7: Install online help

This task is **Recommended**. It applies to **Release 10.7 or 11.0** upgrades.

Requirement	Explanation
Reference manual?	No
Users must log off?	No

To install online help, download patch 3275245 from Oracle*MetaLink* and apply it to your system. Read the readme file carefully, and following any special instructions you find there.

Tasks for All Users

All users must perform the tasks in this section to finish the upgrade.

Understand System Administration Tasks

Make sure you are completely familiar with the information in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Documentation Set*. In addition, always check Oracle*MetaLink* for the latest product information.

Understand Oracle Applications Maintenance Tasks

Make sure you are completely familiar with the information in both volumes of the *Maintaining Oracle Applications Documentation Set*. *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities* and *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures* contain important details about administration utilities, as well as instructions on how to perform manual maintenance tasks.

Implement New Product and Country-specific Functionality

Refer to the implementation or setup guides (or implementation or setup section of the user's guides) associated with the Oracle Applications products in your system for instructions on implementing or setting up new products and features. Refer to Oracle*MetaLink* for other product-specific issues.

Resize the Database

The size of the production database depends on the products that you have licensed and the additional features (such as multiple languages or multiple organizations) that you have configured in your system. Refer to the product-specific documentation.

Change Passwords

The default passwords for the SYS account and SYSTEM account of the Oracle Applications database are *change_on_install* and *manager,* respectively. To maintain database security and restrict access to these accounts, change these passwords.

> **Note:**   The password for both SYS and SYSTEM in the Vision Demo is *manager*.

> **Additional Information:** See Managing User Privileges and Roles
> in *Oracle9i Database Administrator's Guide*.

In addition, change the default passwords for the Applications product accounts in the
production and test databases.

> **Additional Information:** See Applications DBA Duties in *Oracle
> Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*. See also *Oracle
> Applications Concepts*.

Maintain Snapshot Information

Snapshots give a picture of selected APPS-related files in a given APPL_TOP. They
record details for each file in the APPL_TOP (like file name and file version). They
may also record summary information about patches that have been applied to the
APPL_TOP. You can use snapshots to compare two different APPL_TOPs or the same
APPL_TOP at different times, and to track the current status of an APPL_TOP.

> **Additional Information:** See Maintain Applications Files Tasks in
> *Oracle Applications Maintenance Utilities*.

You must take a snapshot of each APPL_TOP before applying any patches so that the
prerequisite patch checking feature in AutoPatch will function correctly. To update the
Snapshot information and set up the prerequisite patch checking feature, follow these
steps:

1. From the AD Administration main menu, select the Maintain Applications Files
   menu. Run the "Maintain snapshot information" task.

2. Under Snapshot Options, choose "Manage Snapshots within this Application
   System."

3. Select "Refresh the Current View of this APPL_TOP in the database."

4. Repeat this step for each APPL_TOP in your system.

Running this task takes one to two hours for each APPL_TOP. However, it does not
require that users log off. You need to run it only once for each APPL_TOP. After that,
AutoPatch automatically updates the current view snapshot for each APPL_TOP.

Back Up Oracle Applications

Have the operating system administrator back up the Oracle Applications product
files, including COMMON_TOP, 8.0.6 technology components, and the iAS technology
components. Have the database administrator back up the Oracle Applications
database and Oracle home components.

Review Security Practices

Review the recommended security processes documented in *Best Practices for Securing
Oracle E-Business Suite - v2.1* on Oracle*MetaLink*. In particular, if you have any
computers requiring direct access to the E-Business Suite database that are not
registered nodes in AutoConfig (such as OAM clients), you must explicitly grant
access as documented in sections 2.15 and 2.16.

Log On to Oracle Applications

Start Oracle Applications and access all Oracle E-Business Suite products from the E-Business Suite Home page, which you access from the Oracle Applications Login page, located at the following URL:

```
http://<host name>.<domain name>:<HTTP port>/oa_servlets/AppsLogin
```

For example:

```
http://oraapps1.oracle.com:8000/oa_servlets/AppsLogin
```

> **Note:** You can also access the E-Business Suite Home page from the Rapid Install Portal. See Access the Rapid Install Portal in Chapter 1 of *Installing Oracle Applications*.

The system administrator should log in the first time using the sysadmin login account that is pre-configured in the Applications installation. Use the System Administrator responsibility to launch an Applications Forms session where the system administrator can complete the implementation steps.

> **Additional Information:** See Appendix F in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide - Security*. See also E-Business Suite Home in *Oracle Applications Concepts*.

System-specific Tasks

The tasks in this section are conditionally required — you perform only the ones that apply to your system.

Run Tablespace Migration Utility

If you ran adgncons.sql in Category 2 to set up tablespaces using the new Oracle Applications Tablespace Model (OATM), the upgrade process created the new tablespaces and populated them with all the new Release 11*i* objects.

You must now migrate your pre-Release 11*i* objects to these new tablespaces by running the OATM Migration Utility. See Tablespace Model in Overview and Requirements for more information. See also Oracle*MetaLink* document 248857.1.

Register Additional Products

All existing products, country-specific functionalities, and languages have been upgraded. However, if you have added products (that were *not* licensed before the upgrade) to your system, you must register them now. Likewise, if you are now using country-specific functionalities or languages that you were not using before the upgrade, you must register these components now. See Registering Applications Products in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures* for complete information.

Configure the Oracle Workflow Java-based Notification Mailer

If you plan to use the Oracle Workflow java-based Notifications Mailer, you must complete additional setup and implementation steps. See *Configuring the Oracle Workflow 2.6 Java-based Notification Mailer with Oracle Applications 11i* (Oracle*MetaLink* Document ID: 231286.1) for complete information.

Set Up and Implement Oracle Discoverer End User Layer (EUL)

If you are using any of the products in the following list, you must complete additional setup and implementation steps for Discoverer 4i EUL.

Product Short Name	Product
abm	Activity Based Management
ams	Oracle Marketing
bis	Business Intelligence System
bix	Interaction Center Intelligence
cn	Oracle Sales Compensation
eni	Engineering Intelligence
fii	Financial Intelligence
hri	Human Resource Intelligence
isc	Supply Chain Intelligence
okc	Oracle Contracts
oki	Oracle Contracts Intelligence
opi	Operations Intelligence
pjm	Oracle Project Manufacturing
pjr	Oracle Project Resource Management
pmi	Process Manufacturing Intelligence
poa	Purchasing Intelligence
psb	Oracle Public Sector Budgeting

Follow the instructions in *Using Discoverer 4i with Oracle Applications 11i* (Oracle*MetaLink* Document ID: 139516.1) to set up and configure the Discoverer EUL. The following products require additional security steps, as described in the associated Oracle*MetaLink* document.

Product	Documentation
Oracle Project Resource Management (PJR)	*Post Installation Documentation Update for PJR.C Customer Using Discoverer 4i* (Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID: 183491.1)
Oracle Marketing Online (AMS)	*Oracle Marketing Online Post Upgrade Steps for Oracle Discoverer* (Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID: 187070.1)
Oracle Contracts (OKC/OKI)	*Discoverer 4i End User Layer (EUL) Maintenance for Oracle Contracts 11i* (Oracle*MetaLink* Doc ID: 187508.1)

Set Up and Implement Oracle Embedded Data Warehouse (EDW)

If you have licensed Oracle Embedded Data Warehouse (EDW), you must complete additional setup and implementation steps before using this product. Refer to *About Oracle E-Business Intelligence Embedded Data Warehouse Patchset D, 11iEDW.D* (Oracle*MetaLink* Document ID: 258899.1) for complete information.

Convert Custom Message Dictionary Functions

Remove the following Message Dictionary functions from the custom code:

Function	Action
fddgcs/fddgme	There is no longer a cascading stack or a message explanation. These functions are obsolete.
fddtoken	Replace with afdtoken. Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: `boolean afdtoken(/*_ text *token_name, text *token_value _*/);`
fddname	Replace with afdname. Takes two arguments (the fddname function takes only the message name). Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: `boolean afdname(/*_ text *applsname, text *msg_name _*/);`
fddget	We strongly recommend that you convert to afdget. The new interface allows you to pass a buffer and buffer size. The old interface assumed the existence of a fixed-size global variable that is internal to the function. Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: `boolean afdget(/*_ text *msg_buf, size_t buf_size _*/);`
fddmsg	Convert to afderror or afdshow. We strongly recommend using these functions explicitly so that you get the intended display behavior (because the new message system display is based on the function called, not on message properties). Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: `boolean afderror(/*_ void _*/);`

> **Additional Information:** See *Oracle Application Object Library/Workflow Technical Reference Manual, Release 10.* See also *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11.*

Convert Database to Multiple Organizations (Multi-Org)

The Rapid Install Vision Demo database is enabled for Multi-Org. However, the production and test databases are not. If you want Multi-Org architecture in the production or test environments, refer to the instructions for converting to Multi-Org in *Oracle Applications Maintenance Procedures*.

> **Additional Information:** See *Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*.

Convert to Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC)

In this release, it is no longer necessary to convert to Multiple Reporting Currencies. It has been incorporated into the APPS schema so the APPS_MRC schema is no longer required. This change, which is transparent to end-users, improves processing efficiency and reduces maintenance. Patches need be applied only once (in the APPS schema), making it unnecessary to synchronize objects between schemas.

> **Additional Information:** See *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications*.

Index